Package ‘singleCellTK’

October 18, 2022

Type Package

Title Comprehensive and Interactive Analysis of Single Cell RNA-Seq Data

Version 2.6.0

Depends R (>= 4.0), SummarizedExperiment, SingleCellExperiment, DelayedArray, Biobase

Description The Single Cell Toolkit (SCTK) in the singleCellTK package provides an interface to popular tools for importing, quality control, analysis, and visualization of single cell RNA-seq data. SCTK allows users to seamlessly integrate tools from various packages at different stages of the analysis workflow. A general ``a la carte'' workflow gives users the ability access to multiple methods for data importing, calculation of general QC metrics, doublet detection, ambient RNA estimation and removal, filtering, normalization, batch correction or integration, dimensionality reduction, 2-D embedding, clustering, marker detection, differential expression, cell type labeling, pathway analysis, and data exporting. Curated workflows can be used to run Seurat and Celda. Streamlined quality control can be performed on the command line using the SCTK-QC pipeline. Users can analyze their data using commands in the R console or by using an interactive Shiny Graphical User Interface (GUI). Specific analyses or entire workflows can be summarized and shared with comprehensive HTML reports generated by Rmarkdown. Additional documentation and vignettes can be found at camplab.net/sctk.

License MIT + file LICENSE

Encoding UTF-8

biocViews SingleCell, GeneExpression, DifferentialExpression, Alignment, Clustering, ImmunoOncology, BatchEffect, Normalization, QualityControl, DataImport, GUI

LazyData FALSE

Imports ape, batchelor, BiocParallel, celldex, colourpicker, colorspace, cowplot, cluster, ComplexHeatmap, data.table, DelayedMatrixStats, DESeq2, dplyr, DT, ExperimentHub, fields, ggplot2, ggplotify, ggrepel, ggtree, gridExtra, GSVA (>= 1.26.0), GSVAdata, igraph, KernSmooth, limma, MAST, Matrix, matrixStats, methods, msigdbr, multtest, plotly, plyr, ROCR, Rtsne, S4Vectors, scater, scMerge (>= 1.2.0), scran, Seurat (>=

3.1.3), shiny, shinyjs, SingleR, SoupX, sva, reshape2, shinyalert, circlize, enrichR, celda, shinycssloaders, DropletUtils, scds (>= 1.2.0), reticulate (>= 1.14), tools, tximport, fishpond, withr, GSEABase, R.utils, zinbwave, scRNAseq (>= 2.0.2), TENxPBMCData, yaml, rmarkdown, magrittr, scDblFinder, metap, VAM (>= 0.5.3), tibble, rlang, TSCAN, TrajectoryUtils, generics, scuttle, utils, stats

RoxygenNote 7.1.2

Suggests testthat, Rsubread, BiocStyle, knitr, lintr, spelling, org.Mm.eg.db, stringr, kableExtra, shinythemes, shinyBS, shinyjqui, shinyWidgets, shinyFiles, BiocGenerics, RColorBrewer, fastmap (>= 1.1.0)

VignetteBuilder knitr

URL `https://www.camplab.net/sctk/`

BugReports `https://github.com/compbiomed/singleCellTK/issues`

Language en-US

git_url https://git.bioconductor.org/packages/singleCellTK

git_branch RELEASE_3_15

git_last_commit b6fc536

git_last_commit_date 2022-04-26

Date/Publication 2022-10-18

Author Yichen Wang [aut, cre] (<`https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4347-5199`>),
Irzam Sarfraz [aut] (<`https://orcid.org/0000-0001-8121-792X`>),
Rui Hong [aut],
Yusuke Koga [aut],
Salam Alabdullatif [aut],
David Jenkins [aut] (<`https://orcid.org/0000-0002-7451-4288`>),
Vidya Akavoor [aut],
Xinyun Cao [aut],
Shruthi Bandyadka [aut],
Anastasia Leshchyk [aut],
Tyler Faits [aut],
Mohammed Muzamil Khan [aut],
Zhe Wang [aut],
W. Evan Johnson [aut] (<`https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6247-6595`>),
Joshua David Campbell [aut]

Maintainer Yichen Wang <`wangych@bu.edu`>

R topics documented:

`.addSeuratToMetaDataSCE` *.addSeuratToMetaDataSCE Adds the input seurat object to the metadata slot of the input sce object (after removing the data matrices)*

Description

.addSeuratToMetaDataSCE Adds the input seurat object to the metadata slot of the input sce object (after removing the data matrices)

Usage

```
.addSeuratToMetaDataSCE(inSCE, seuratObject)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object to which seurat object should be added in the metadata slot (copy to)
`seuratObject`	seurat object which should be added to the metadata slot of sce object (copy from)

Value

Updated `SingleCellExperiment` object which now contains the seurat object in its metadata slot (excluding data matrices)

`.checkDiffExpResultExists` *Check if the specified MAST result in SingleCellExperiment object is complete. But does not garantee the biological correctness.*

Description

Check if the specified MAST result in SingleCellExperiment object is complete. But does not garantee the biological correctness.

Usage

```
.checkDiffExpResultExists(inSCE, useResult, labelBy = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. a differential expression analysis function has to be run in advance.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`labelBy`	A single character for a column of `rowData(inSCE)` as where to search for the labeling text. Default `NULL`.

Value

Stop point if found

`.computeSignificantPC` *.computeSignificantPC Computes the significant principal components from an input sce object (must contain pca slot) using stdev*

Description

.computeSignificantPC Computes the significant principal components from an input sce object (must contain pca slot) using stdev

Usage

```
.computeSignificantPC(inSCE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object with pca computed

Value

A numerical value indicating how many number of components are considered significant

`.extractSCEAnnotation` *Extract columns from row/colData and transfer to factors*

Description

Extract columns from row/colData and transfer to factors

Usage

```
.extractSCEAnnotation(inSCE, axis = NULL, columns = NULL, index = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`axis`	Choose from `"col"` or `"row"`.
`columns`	character vector. The columns needed to be extracted. If `NULL`, will return an empty `data.frame` with matched row names. Default `NULL`.
`index`	Valid index to subset the col/row.

Value

A `data.frame` object.

.formatDEAList *Helper function for differential expression analysis methods that accepts multiple ways of conditional subsetting and returns stable index format. Meanwhile it does all the input checkings.*

Description

Helper function for differential expression analysis methods that accepts multiple ways of conditional subsetting and returns stable index format. Meanwhile it does all the input checkings.

Usage

```
.formatDEAList(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  useReducedDim,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  analysisName,
  covariates = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	character. A string specifying which assay to use. Required.
`useReducedDim`	character. A string specifying which reducedDim to use for DE analysis. Usually a pathway analysis result matrix. Set `useAssay` to `NULL` when using. Required.
`index1`	Any type of indices that can subset a SingleCellExperiment inherited object by cells. Specifies which cells are of interests. Default `NULL`.
`index2`	Any type of indices that can subset a SingleCellExperiment inherited object by cells. specifies the control group against those specified by `index1`. If `NULL` when using index specification, `index1` cells will be compared with all other cells. Default `NULL`.
`class`	A vector/factor with `ncol(inSCE)` elements, or a character scalar that specifies a column name of `colData(inSCE)`. Default `NULL`.
`classGroup1`	a vector specifying which "levels" given in `class` are of interests. Default `NULL`.

`classGroup2`	a vector specifying which "levels" given in `class` is the control group against those specified by `classGroup1`. If `NULL` when using annotation specification, `classGroup1` cells will be compared with all other cells.
`groupName1`	A character scalar naming the group of interests. Required.
`groupName2`	A character scalar naming the control group. Required.
`analysisName`	A character scalar naming the DEG analysis. Required
`covariates`	A character vector of additional covariates used in linear regression methods such as Limma and DESeq2. Default `NULL`
`overwrite`	A logical scalar. Whether to overwrite result if exists. Default `FALSE`.

Value

A list object with part of formatted DE analysis information

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

`.getComponentNames` *.getComponentNames Creates a list of PC/IC components to populate the picker for PC/IC heatmap generation*

Description

.getComponentNames Creates a list of PC/IC components to populate the picker for PC/IC heatmap generation

Usage

```
.getComponentNames(maxComponents, component = c("PC", "IC"))
```

Arguments

`maxComponents`	Number of components to return for the picker
`component`	Which component to use. Choices are `PC` or `IC`.

Value

List of component names (appended with `PC` or `IC`)

`.ggBar` *Bar plot plotting tool.*

Description

Visualizes specified values via a violin plot.

Usage

```
.ggBar(
  y,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 15
)
```

Arguments

`y`	Numeric values to be plotted on y-axis.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimensions.

`.ggDensity` *Density plot plotting tool.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the specified slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a density plot.

Usage

```
.ggDensity(
  value,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  cutoff = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`value`	Numeric value that will be plotted via density plot.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.

combinePlot	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
cutoff	Numeric value. The plot will be annotated with a vertical line if set. Default NULL.

Value

density plot, in .ggplot.

`.ggScatter` *Plot results of reduced dimensions data.*

Description

Plot results of reduced dimensions data and colors the plots by the input vector.

Usage

```
.ggScatter(
  inSCE,
  reducedDimName,
  sample = NULL,
  colorBy = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  conditionClass = NULL,
  labelClusters = FALSE,
  clusterLabelSize = 3.5,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  colorScale = NULL,
  colorLow = "white",
  colorMid = "gray",
  colorHigh = "blue",
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  legendTitle = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required
reducedDimName	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
sample	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
colorBy	If provided, colors dots in the scatterplot based on value.
groupBy	If provided, facet wrap the scatterplot based on value.
shape	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
conditionClass	class of the annotation data used in colorBy. Options are NULL, "factor" or "numeric". If NULL, class will default to the original class. Default NULL.
labelClusters	Logical. Whether the cluster labels are plotted. Default FALSE.
clusterLabelSize	Numeric. Determines the size of cluster label when ‘labelClusters‘ is set to TRUE. Default 3.5.
xlab	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
ylab	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
baseSize	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
axisSize	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
axisLabelSize	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
dim1	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
dim2	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
bin	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
binLabel	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
dotSize	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
transparency	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
colorScale	Vector. Needs to be same length as the number of unique levels of ‘colorBy‘. Will be used only if conditionClass = "factor" or "character". Default NULL.

`colorLow`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the lowest values on the scale. Default ’white’. Will be used only if conditionClass = "numeric".
`colorMid`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the midpoint on the scale. Default ’gray’. Will be used only if conditionClass = "numeric".
`colorHigh`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the highest values on the scale. Default ’blue’. Will be used only if conditionClass = "numeric".
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`legendTitle`	title of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimensions.

`.ggViolin` *Violin plot plotting tool.*

Description

Visualizes specified values via a violin plot.

Usage

```
.ggViolin(
  y,
  groupBy = NULL,
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = TRUE,
  dots = TRUE,
  plotOrder = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  combinePlot = "none",
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  hcutoff = NULL,
  hcolor = "red",
  hsize = 1,
  hlinetype = 1,
  vcutoff = NULL,
  vcolor = "red",
  vsize = 1,
  vlinetype = 1
)
```

Arguments

`y`	Numeric values to be plotted on y-axis.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`plotOrder`	Character vector. If set, reorders the violin plots in the order of the character vector when ‘groupBy‘ is set. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.

`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`hcutoff`	Adds a horizontal line with the y-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`hcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the horizontal cutoff line, if drawn. Default ’black’.
`hsize`	Size of horizontal line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`hlinetype`	Type of horizontal line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`vcutoff`	Adds a vertical line with the x-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`vcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the vertical cutoff line, if drawn. Default ’black’.
`vsize`	Size of vertical line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`vlinetype`	Type of vertical line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimensions.

`.sce2adata` *Coverts SingleCellExperiment object from R to anndata.AnnData object in Python*

Description

The AnnData object here can be saved to .h5ad file and read into Python interactive console. Mostly used senario is when you want to apply reticulated Python function, which only works with an anndata.AnnData object.

Usage

```
.sce2adata(SCE, useAssay = "counts")
```

Arguments

`SCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Character, default ‘"counts"‘. The name of assay of interests that will be set as the primary matrix of the output AnnData. Available options can be listed by ‘assayNames(SCE)‘. Thee primary matrix will be saved in ‘adata$X‘, Other assays will be stored in ‘adata$obsm‘ together with the low-dimension representations (for now).

Value

A Python anndata.AnnData object

`.seuratGetVariableFeatures` *.seuratGetVariableFeatures Retrieves the requested number of variable feature names*

Description

.seuratGetVariableFeatures Retrieves the requested number of variable feature names

Usage

```
.seuratGetVariableFeatures(inSCE, numberOfFeatures)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object from which to extract the variable feature names
`numberOfFeatures`	numerical value indicating how many feature names should be retrieved (default is 100)

Value

list() of variable feature names

.seuratInvalidate *.seuratInvalidate Removes seurat data from the input SingleCellExperiment object specified by the task in the Seurat workflow.*

Description

.seuratInvalidate Removes seurat data from the input SingleCellExperiment object specified by the task in the Seurat workflow.

Usage

```
.seuratInvalidate(
  inSCE,
  scaleData = TRUE,
  varFeatures = TRUE,
  PCA = TRUE,
  ICA = TRUE,
  tSNE = TRUE,
  UMAP = TRUE,
  clusters = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object to remove Seurat data from.
`scaleData`	Remove scaled data from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`varFeatures`	Remove variable features from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`PCA`	Remove PCA from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`ICA`	Remove ICA from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`tSNE`	Remove tSNE from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`UMAP`	Remove UMAP from seurat. Default `TRUE`.
`clusters`	Remove clusters from seurat. Default `TRUE`.

Value

Updated SingleCellExperiment object containing the Seurat object in the metadata slot with the data removed

`.updateAssaySCE` *.updateAssaySCE Update/Modify/Add an assay in the provided SingleCellExperiment object from a Seurat object*

Description

.updateAssaySCE Update/Modify/Add an assay in the provided SingleCellExperiment object from a Seurat object

Usage

```
.updateAssaySCE(
  inSCE,
  seuratObject,
  assaySlotSCE,
  seuratDataSlot = "counts",
  seuratAssaySlot = "RNA"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object
`seuratObject`	Input Seurat object
`assaySlotSCE`	Selected assay to update in the input SingleCellExperiment object
`seuratDataSlot`	Selected data slot from the Seurat object. Default `"counts"`.
`seuratAssaySlot`	Selected assay from Seurat object. Default `"RNA"`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with data from Seurat object appended to the assay slot.

`calcEffectSizes` *Finds the effect sizes for all genes in the original dataset, regardless of significance.*

Description

Finds the effect sizes for all genes in the original dataset, regardless of significance.

Usage

```
calcEffectSizes(countMatrix, condition)
```

Arguments

`countMatrix`	Matrix. A simulated counts matrix, sans labels.
`condition`	Factor. The condition labels for the simulated cells. If more than 2 conditions are given, the first will be compared to all others by default.

Value

A vector of cohen's d effect sizes for each gene.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
res <- calcEffectSizes(assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts"),
                       condition = colData(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)$level1class)
```

`combineSCE` *Combine a list of SingleCellExperiment objects as one SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Combine a list of SingleCellExperiment objects as one SingleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
combineSCE(sceList, by.r = NULL, by.c = NULL, combined = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`sceList`	A list contains SingleCellExperiment objects. Currently, combineSCE function only support combining SCE objects with assay in dgCMatrix format. It does not support combining SCE with assay in delayedArray format.
`by.r`	Specifications of the columns used for merging rowData. If set as NULL, the rownames of rowData tables will be used to merging rowData. Default is NULL.
`by.c`	Specifications of the columns used for merging colData. If set as NULL, the rownames of colData tables will be used to merging colData. Default is NULL.
`combined`	logical; if TRUE, it will combine the list of SingleCellExperiment objects and return a SingleCellExperiment. If FALSE, it will return a list of SingleCellExperiment whose rowData, colData, assay and reducedDim data slot are compatible within SCE objects in the list. Default is TRUE.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object which combines all objects in sceList. The colData is merged.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
combinedsce <- combineSCE(list(sce,sce), by.r = NULL, by.c = NULL, combined = TRUE)
```

`computeHeatmap` *computeHeatmap The computeHeatmap method computes the heatmap visualization for a set of features against a set of dimensionality reduction components. This method uses the heatmap computation algorithm code from* `Seurat` *but plots the heatmap using* `ComplexHeatmap` *and* `cowplot` *libraries.*

Description

computeHeatmap The computeHeatmap method computes the heatmap visualization for a set of features against a set of dimensionality reduction components. This method uses the heatmap computation algorithm code from `Seurat` but plots the heatmap using `ComplexHeatmap` and `cowplot` libraries.

Usage

```
computeHeatmap(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  dims = 10,
  nfeatures = 30,
  cells = NULL,
  reduction = "pca",
  disp.min = -2.5,
  disp.max = 2.5,
  balanced = TRUE,
  nCol = NULL,
  externalReduction = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`useAssay`	The assay to use for heatmap computation.
`dims`	Specify the number of dimensions to use for heatmap. Default `10`.
`nfeatures`	Specify the number of features to use for heatmap. Default is `30`.
`cells`	Specify the samples/cells to use for heatmap computation. Default is `NULL` which will utilize all samples in the assay.
`reduction`	Specify the reduction slot in the input object. Default is `"pca"`.
`disp.min`	Specify the minimum dispersion value to use for floor clipping of assay values. Default is `-2.5`.

`disp.max`	Specify the maximum dispersion value to use for ceiling clipping of assay values. Default is `2.5`.
`balanced`	Specify if the number of of up-regulated and down-regulated features should be balanced. Default is `TRUE`.
`nCol`	Specify the number of columns in the output plot. Default is `NULL` which will auto-compute the number of columns.
`externalReduction`	Specify an external reduction if not present in the input object. This external reduction should be created using `CreateDimReducObject` function.

Value

Heatmap plot object.

`computeZScore` *Compute Z-Score*

Description

Computes Z-Score from an input count matrix using the formula ((x-mean(x))/sd(x)) for each gene across all cells. The input count matrix can either be a base matrix, dgCMatrix or a DelayedMatrix. Computations are performed using DelayedMatrixStats package to efficiently compute the Z-Score matrix.

Usage

```
computeZScore(counts)
```

Arguments

`counts`	matrix (base matrix, dgCMatrix or DelayedMatrix)

Value

z-score computed counts matrix (DelayedMatrix)

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
assay(sce_chcl, "countsZScore") <- computeZScore(assay(sce_chcl, "counts"))
```

constructSCE — *Create SingleCellExperiment object from csv or txt input*

Description

Create SingleCellExperiment object from csv or txt input

Usage

```
constructSCE(data, samplename)
```

Arguments

`data`	A data.table object containing the count matrix.
`samplename`	The sample name of the data.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object containing the count matrix.

convertSCEToSeurat — *convertSCEToSeurat Converts sce object to seurat while retaining all assays and metadata*

Description

convertSCEToSeurat Converts sce object to seurat while retaining all assays and metadata

Usage

```
convertSCEToSeurat(
  inSCE,
  countsAssay = NULL,
  normAssay = NULL,
  scaledAssay = NULL,
  copyColData = FALSE,
  copyReducedDim = FALSE,
  copyDecontX = FALSE,
  pcaReducedDim = NULL,
  icaReducedDim = NULL,
  tsneReducedDim = NULL,
  umapReducedDim = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object to convert to a Seurat object.
`countsAssay`	Which assay to use from sce object for raw counts. Default `NULL`.
`normAssay`	Which assay to use from sce object for normalized data. Default `NULL`.
`scaledAssay`	Which assay to use from sce object for scaled data. Default `NULL`.
`copyColData`	Boolean. Whether copy 'colData' of SCE object to the 'meta.data' of Seurat object. Default `FALSE`.
`copyReducedDim`	Boolean. Whether copy 'reducedDims' of the SCE object to the 'reductions' of Seurat object. Default `FALSE`.
`copyDecontX`	Boolean. Whether copy 'decontXcounts' assay of the SCE object to the 'assays' of Seurat object. Default `TRUE`.
`pcaReducedDim`	Specify a character value indicating the name of the reducedDim to store as default pca computation in the output seurat object. Default is `NULL` which will not store any reducedDim as the default pca. This will only work when `copyReducedDim` parameter is set to `TRUE`.
`icaReducedDim`	Specify a character value indicating the name of the reducedDim to store as default ica computation in the output seurat object. Default is `NULL` which will not store any reducedDim as the default ica. This will only work when `copyReducedDim` parameter is set to `TRUE`.
`tsneReducedDim`	Specify a character value indicating the name of the reducedDim to store as default tsne computation in the output seurat object. Default is `NULL` which will not store any reducedDim as the default tsne. This will only work when `copyReducedDim` parameter is set to `TRUE`.
`umapReducedDim`	Specify a character value indicating the name of the reducedDim to store as default umap computation in the output seurat object. Default is `NULL` which will not store any reducedDim as the default umap. This will only work when `copyReducedDim` parameter is set to `TRUE`.

Value

Updated seurat object that contains all data from the input sce object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
seurat <- convertSCEToSeurat(sce)
```

`convertSeuratToSCE` *convertSeuratToSCE Converts the input seurat object to a sce object*

Description

convertSeuratToSCE Converts the input seurat object to a sce object

Usage

```
convertSeuratToSCE(
  seuratObject,
  normAssayName = "seuratNormData",
  scaledAssayName = "seuratScaledData"
)
```

Arguments

`seuratObject`	Input Seurat object
`normAssayName`	Name of assay to store the normalized data. Default `"seuratNormData"`.
`scaledAssayName`	Name of assay to store the scaled data. Default `"seuratScaledData"`.

Value

`SingleCellExperiment` output object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
seurat <- convertSCEToSeurat(sce)
sce <- convertSeuratToSCE(seurat)
```

`dataAnnotationColor` *Generate distinct colors for all categorical col/rowData entries. Character columns will be considered as well as all-integer columns. Any column with all-distinct values will be excluded.*

Description

Generate distinct colors for all categorical col/rowData entries. Character columns will be considered as well as all-integer columns. Any column with all-distinct values will be excluded.

Usage

```
dataAnnotationColor(inSCE, axis = NULL, colorGen = distinctColors)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`axis`	Choose from `"col"` or `"row"`.
`colorGen`	A function that generates color code vector by giving an integer for the number of colors. Alternatively, `rainbow`. Default `distinctColors`.

Value

A `list` object containing distinct colors mapped to all possible categorical entries in `rowData(inSCE)` or `colData(inSCE)`.

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

---

dedupRowNames

Deduplicate the rownames of a matrix or SingleCellExperiment object Adds '-1', '-2', ... '-i' to multiple duplicated rownames, and in place replace the unique rownames, store unique rownames in `rowData`*, or return the unique rownames as character vecetor.*

Description

Deduplicate the rownames of a matrix or SingleCellExperiment object Adds '-1', '-2', ... '-i' to multiple duplicated rownames, and in place replace the unique rownames, store unique rownames in `rowData`, or return the unique rownames as character vecetor.

Usage

```
dedupRowNames(x, as.rowData = FALSE, return.list = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`x`	A matrix like or /linkS4classSingleCellExperiment object, on which we can apply `rownames()` to and has duplicated rownames.
`as.rowData`	Only applicable when `x` is a /linkS4classSingleCellExperiment object. When set to `TRUE`, will insert a new column called `"rownames.uniq"` to `rowData(x)`, with the deduplicated rownames.
`return.list`	When set to `TRUE`, will return a character vector of the deduplicated rownames.

Value

By default, a matrix or /linkS4classSingleCellExperiment object with rownames deduplicated. When `x` is a /linkS4classSingleCellExperiment and `as.rowData` is set to `TRUE`, will return `x` with `rowData` updated. When `return.list` is set to `TRUE`, will return a character vector with the deduplicated rownames.

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- dedupRowNames(sce)
```

`detectCellOutlier` *Detecting outliers within the SingleCellExperiment object.*

Description

A wrapper function for isOutlier. Identify outliers from numeric vectors stored in the SingleCell-Experiment object.

Usage

```
detectCellOutlier(
  inSCE,
  slotName,
  itemName,
  sample = NULL,
  nmads = 3,
  type = "both",
  overwrite = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`slotName`	Desired slot of SingleCellExperiment used for plotting. Possible options: "assays", "colData", "metadata", "reducedDims". Required.
`itemName`	Desired vector within the slot used for plotting. Required.
`sample`	A single character specifying a name that can be found in `colData(inSCE)` to directly use the cell annotation; or a character vector with as many elements as cells to indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL. decontX will be run on cells from each sample separately.
`nmads`	Integer. Number of median absolute deviation. Parameter may be adjusted for more lenient or stringent outlier cutoff. Default 3.
`type`	Character. Type/direction of outlier detection; whether the lower/higher outliers should be detected, or both. Options are "both", "lower", "higher".
`overwrite`	Boolean. If TRUE, and this function has previously generated an outlier decision on the same itemName, the outlier decision will be overwritten. Default TRUE.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with ” added to the colData slot. Additionally, the decontaminated counts will be added as an assay called ’decontXCounts’.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runDecontX(sce[,sample(ncol(sce),20)])
sce <- detectCellOutlier(sce, slotName = "colData", sample = sce$sample,
 nmads = 4, itemName = "decontX_contamination", type = "both")
```

---

diffAbundanceFET   *Calculate Differential Abundance with FET*

Description

Calculate Differential Abundance with FET

Usage

```
diffAbundanceFET(inSCE, cluster, variable, control, case, analysisName)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`cluster`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the cluster label in `colData`.
`variable`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the phenotype labels in `colData`.
`control`	`character`. Specifying one or more categories that can be found in the vector specified by `variable`.
`case`	`character`. Specifying one or more categories that can be found in the vector specified by `variable`.
`analysisName`	A single `character`. Will be used for naming the result table, which will be saved in metadata slot.

Details

This function will calculate the cell counting and fraction by dividing all cells to groups specified by the arguments, together with statistical summary by performing Fisher Exact Tests (FET).

Value

The original `SingleCellExperiment` object with `metadata(inSCE)` updated with a list `diffAbundanceFET`, containing a new `data.frame` for the analysis result, named by `analysisName`. The `data.frame` contains columns for number and fraction of cells that belong to different cases, as well as "Odds_Ratio", "PValue" and "FDR".

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- diffAbundanceFET(inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                        cluster = "tissue",
                                        variable = "level1class",
                                        case = "oligodendrocytes",
                                        control = "microglia",
                                        analysisName = "diffAbundFET")
```

`discreteColorPalette` *Generate given number of color codes*

Description

Three different generation methods are wrapped, including `distinctColors`, [randomcoloR](SCTK_PerformingQC_Cell_V
and the `ggplot` default color generation.

Usage

```
discreteColorPalette(
  n,
  palette = c("random", "ggplot", "celda"),
  seed = 12345,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`n`	An integer, the number of color codes to generate.
`palette`	A single character string. Select the method, available options are `"ggplot"`, `"celda"` and `"random"`. Default `"random"`.
`seed`	An integer. Set the seed for random process that happens only in "random" generation. Default `12345`.
`...`	Other arguments that are passed to the internal function, according to the method selected.

Value

A character vector of `n` hex color codes.

Examples

```
discreteColorPalette(n = 3)
```

distinctColors *Generate a distinct palette for coloring different clusters*

Description

Generate a distinct palette for coloring different clusters

Usage

```
distinctColors(
  n,
  hues = c("red", "cyan", "orange", "blue", "yellow", "purple", "green", "magenta"),
  saturation.range = c(0.7, 1),
  value.range = c(0.7, 1)
)
```

Arguments

`n`	Integer; Number of colors to generate
`hues`	Character vector of R colors available from the colors() function. These will be used as the base colors for the clustering scheme. Different saturations and values (i.e. darkness) will be generated for each hue.
`saturation.range`	Numeric vector of length 2 with values between 0 and 1. Default: c(0.25, 1)
`value.range`	Numeric vector of length 2 with values between 0 and 1. Default: c(0.5, 1)

Value

A vector of distinct colors that have been converted to HEX from HSV.

Examples

```
distinctColors(10)
```

downSampleCells *Estimate numbers of detected genes, significantly differentially expressed genes, and median significant effect size*

Description

Estimate numbers of detected genes, significantly differentially expressed genes, and median significant effect size

Usage

```
downSampleCells(
  originalData,
  useAssay = "counts",
  minCountDetec = 10,
  minCellsDetec = 3,
  minCellnum = 10,
  maxCellnum = 1000,
  realLabels,
  depthResolution = 10,
  iterations = 10,
  totalReads = 1e+06
)
```

Arguments

`originalData`	The SingleCellExperiment object storing all assay data from the shiny app.
`useAssay`	Character. The name of the assay to be used for subsampling.
`minCountDetec`	Numeric. The minimum number of reads found for a gene to be considered detected.
`minCellsDetec`	Numeric. The minimum number of cells a gene must have at least 1 read in for it to be considered detected.
`minCellnum`	Numeric. The minimum number of virtual cells to include in the smallest simulated dataset.
`maxCellnum`	Numeric. The maximum number of virtual cells to include in the largest simulated dataset
`realLabels`	Character. The name of the condition of interest. Must match a name from sample data. If only two factors present in the corresponding colData, will default to t-test. If multiple factors, will default to ANOVA.
`depthResolution`	Numeric. How many different read depth should the script simulate? Will simulate a number of experimental designs ranging from 10 reads to maxReadDepth, with logarithmic spacing.
`iterations`	Numeric. How many times should each experimental design be simulated?
`totalReads`	Numeric. How many aligned reads to put in each simulated dataset.

Value

A 3-dimensional array, with dimensions = c(iterations, depthResolution, 3). [,,1] contains the number of detected genes in each simulated dataset, [,,2] contains the number of significantly differentially expressed genes in each simulation, and [,,3] contains the mediansignificant effect size in each simulation. If no genes are significantly differentially expressed, the median effect size defaults to infinity.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
subset <- mouseBrainSubsetSCE[seq(100),]
res <- downSampleCells(subset,
                       realLabels = "level1class",
                       iterations=2)
```

---

downSampleDepth   *Estimate numbers of detected genes, significantly differentially expressed genes, and median significant effect size*

Description

Estimate numbers of detected genes, significantly differentially expressed genes, and median significant effect size

Usage

```
downSampleDepth(
  originalData,
  useAssay = "counts",
  minCount = 10,
  minCells = 3,
  maxDepth = 1e+07,
  realLabels,
  depthResolution = 10,
  iterations = 10
)
```

Arguments

originalData	SingleCellExperiment object storing all assay data from the shiny app.
useAssay	Character. The name of the assay to be used for subsampling.
minCount	Numeric. The minimum number of reads found for a gene to be considered detected.
minCells	Numeric. The minimum number of cells a gene must have at least 1 read in for it to be considered detected.
maxDepth	Numeric. The highest number of total reads to be simulated.
realLabels	Character. The name of the condition of interest. Must match a name from sample data.
depthResolution	Numeric. How many different read depth should the script simulate? Will simulate a number of experimental designs ranging from 10 reads to maxReadDepth, with logarithmic spacing.
iterations	Numeric. How many times should each experimental design be simulated?

Value

A 3-dimensional array, with dimensions = c(iterations, depthResolution, 3). [,,1] contains the number of detected genes in each simulated dataset, [,,2] contains the number of significantly differentially expressed genes in each simulation, and [,,3] contains the mediansignificant effect size in each simulation. If no genes are significantly differentially expressed, the median effect size defaults to infinity.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
subset <- mouseBrainSubsetSCE[seq(1000),]
res <- downSampleDepth(subset,
                       realLabels = "level1class",
                       iterations=2)
```

`expData` *expData Get data item from an input* `SingleCellExperiment` *object. The data item can be an* `assay`*,* `altExp` *(subset) or a* `reducedDim`*, which is retrieved based on the name of the data item.*

Description

expData Get data item from an input `SingleCellExperiment` object. The data item can be an `assay`, `altExp` (subset) or a `reducedDim`, which is retrieved based on the name of the data item.

Usage

```
expData(inSCE, assayName)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assayName`	Specify the name of the data item to retrieve.

Value

Specified data item.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
mat <- expData(sce, "counts")
```

`expData,ANY,character-method`

expData Get data item from an input `SingleCellExperiment` object. The data item can be an `assay`, `altExp` (subset) or a `reducedDim`, which is retrieved based on the name of the data item.

Description

expData Get data item from an input `SingleCellExperiment` object. The data item can be an `assay`, `altExp` (subset) or a `reducedDim`, which is retrieved based on the name of the data item.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ANY,character'
expData(inSCE, assayName)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assayName`	Specify the name of the data item to retrieve.

Value

Specified data item.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
mat <- expData(sce, "counts")
```

`expData<-`

expData Store data items using tags to identify the type of data item stored. To be used as a replacement for assay<- setter function but with additional parameter to set a tag to a data item.

Description

expData Store data items using tags to identify the type of data item stored. To be used as a replacement for assay<- setter function but with additional parameter to set a tag to a data item.

Usage

```
expData(inSCE, assayName, tag = NULL, altExp = FALSE) <- value
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assayName`	Specify the name of the input assay.
`tag`	Specify the tag to store against the input assay. Default is `NULL`, which will set the tag to "uncategorized".
`altExp`	A `logical` value indicating if the input assay is a `altExp` or a subset assay.
`value`	An input matrix-like value to store in the SCE object.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the newly stored data.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
mat <- expData(sce, "counts")
expData(sce, "counts", tag = "raw") <- mat
```

`expData<-,ANY,character,CharacterOrNullOrMissing,logical-method`

expData Store data items using tags to identify the type of data item stored. To be used as a replacement for assay<- setter function but with additional parameter to set a tag to a data item.

Description

expData Store data items using tags to identify the type of data item stored. To be used as a replacement for assay<- setter function but with additional parameter to set a tag to a data item.

Usage

```
## S4 replacement method for signature 'ANY,character,CharacterOrNullOrMissing,logical'
expData(inSCE, assayName, tag = NULL, altExp = FALSE) <- value
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assayName`	Specify the name of the input assay.
`tag`	Specify the tag to store against the input assay. Default is `NULL`, which will set the tag to "uncategorized".
`altExp`	A `logical` value indicating if the input assay is a `altExp` or a subset assay.
`value`	An input matrix-like value to store in the SCE object.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the newly stored data.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
mat <- expData(sce, "counts")
expData(sce, "counts", tag = "raw") <- mat
```

---

expDataNames — *expDataNames Get names of all the data items in the input* `SingleCellExperiment` *object including assays, altExps and reducedDims.*

Description

expDataNames Get names of all the data items in the input `SingleCellExperiment` object including assays, altExps and reducedDims.

Usage

```
expDataNames(inSCE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.

Value

A combined `vector` of `assayNames`, `altExpNames` and `reducedDimNames`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
expDataNames(sce)
```

---

expDataNames,ANY-method — *expDataNames Get names of all the data items in the input* `SingleCellExperiment` *object including assays, altExps and reducedDims.*

Description

expDataNames Get names of all the data items in the input `SingleCellExperiment` object including assays, altExps and reducedDims.

Usage

```
## S4 method for signature 'ANY'
expDataNames(inSCE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.

Value

A combined `vector` of `assayNames`, `altExpNames` and `reducedDimNames`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
expDataNames(sce)
```

expDeleteDataTag *expDeleteDataTag Remove tag against an input data from the stored tag information in the metadata of the input object.*

Description

expDeleteDataTag Remove tag against an input data from the stored tag information in the metadata of the input object.

Usage

```
expDeleteDataTag(inSCE, assay)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assay`	Name of the assay or the data item against which a tag should be removed.

Value

The input `SingleCellExperiment` object with tag information removed from the metadata slot.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- expSetDataTag(sce, "raw", "counts")
sce <- expDeleteDataTag(sce, "counts")
```

exportSCE *Export data in SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Export data in SingleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
exportSCE(
  inSCE,
  samplename = "sample",
  directory = "./",
  type = "Cells",
  format = c("SCE", "AnnData", "FlatFile", "HTAN", "Seurat")
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object that contains the data. QC metrics are stored in colData of the singleCellExperiment object.
`samplename`	Sample name. This will be used as name of subdirectories and the prefix of flat file output. Default is 'sample'.
`directory`	Output directory. Default is './'.
`type`	Type of data. The type of data stored in SingleCellExperiment object. It can be 'Droplets'(raw droplets matrix) or 'Cells' (cells matrix).
`format`	The format of output. It currently supports flat files, rds files and python h5 files. It can output multiple formats. Default: c("SCE", "AnnData", "FlatFile", "HTAN").

Value

Generates a file containing data from `inSCE`, in specified `format`.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
## Not run:
exportSCE(sce, format = "SCE")

## End(Not run)
```

exportSCEtoAnnData — *Export a SingleCellExperiment R object as Python annData object*

Description

Writes all assays, colData, rowData, reducedDims, and altExps objects in a SingleCellExperiment to a Python annData object in the .h5ad format All parameters of Anndata.write_h5ad function (https://icb-anndata.readthedocs-hosted.com/en/stable/anndata.AnnData.write_h5ad.html) are available as parameters to this export function and set to defaults. Defaults can be overridden at function call.

Usage

```
exportSCEtoAnnData(
  sce,
  useAssay = "counts",
  outputDir = "./",
  prefix = "sample",
  overwrite = TRUE,
  compression = c("gzip", "lzf", "None"),
  compressionOpts = NULL,
  forceDense = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`sce`	SingleCellExperiment R object to be exported.
`useAssay`	Character. The name of assay of interests that will be set as the primary matrix of the output AnnData. Default `"counts"`.
`outputDir`	Path to the directory where .h5ad outputs will be written. Default is the current working directory.
`prefix`	Prefix to use for the name of the output file. Default `"sample"`.
`overwrite`	Boolean. Default `TRUE`.
`compression`	If output file compression is required, this variable accepts 'gzip', 'lzf' or "None" as inputs. Default `"gzip"`.
`compressionOpts`	Integer. Sets the compression level
`forceDense`	Default `False` Write sparse data as a dense matrix. Refer `anndata.write_h5ad` documentation for details. Default `NULL`.

Value

Generates a Python anndata object containing data from `inSCE`.

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
## Not run:
exportSCEtoAnnData(sce=sce_chcl, compression="gzip")

## End(Not run)
```

`exportSCEtoFlatFile` *Export a SingleCellExperiment object to flat text files*

Description

Writes all assays, colData, rowData, reducedDims, and altExps objects in a SingleCellExperiment to text files. The items in the 'metadata' slot remain stored in list and are saved in an RDS file.

Usage

```
exportSCEtoFlatFile(
  sce,
  outputDir = "./",
  overwrite = TRUE,
  gzipped = TRUE,
  prefix = "SCE"
)
```

Arguments

`sce`	SingleCellExperiment object to be exported.
`outputDir`	Name of the directory to store the exported file(s).
`overwrite`	Boolean. Whether to overwrite the output files. Default `TRUE`.
`gzipped`	Boolean. `TRUE` if the output files are to be gzip compressed. `FALSE` otherwise. Default `TRUE`.
`prefix`	Prefix of file names.

Value

Generates text files containing data from `inSCE`.

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
## Not run:
exportSCEtoFlatFile(sce_chcl, "sce_chcl")

## End(Not run)
```

`exportSCEToSeurat` *Export data in Seurat object*

Description

Export data in Seurat object

Usage

```
exportSCEToSeurat(
  inSCE,
  prefix = "sample",
  outputDir = "./",
  overwrite = TRUE,
  copyColData = TRUE,
  copyReducedDim = TRUE,
  copyDecontX = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object that contains the data. QC metrics are stored in colData of the singleCellExperiment object.
`prefix`	Prefix to use for the name of the output file. Default `"sample"`.
`outputDir`	Path to the directory where outputs will be written. Default is the current working directory.
`overwrite`	Boolean. Whether overwrite the output if it already exists in the outputDir. Default `TRUE`.
`copyColData`	Boolean. Whether copy 'colData' of SCE object to the 'meta.data' of Seurat object. Default `TRUE`.
`copyReducedDim`	Boolean. Whether copy 'reducedDims' of the SCE object to the 'reductions' of Seurat object. Default `TRUE`.
`copyDecontX`	Boolean. Whether copy 'decontXcounts' assay of the SCE object to the 'assays' of Seurat object. Default `TRUE`.

Value

Generates a Seurat object containing data from `inSCE`.

expSetDataTag — *expSetDataTag Set tag to an assay or a data item in the input SCE object.*

Description

expSetDataTag Set tag to an assay or a data item in the input SCE object.

Usage

```
expSetDataTag(inSCE, assayType, assays)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`assayType`	Specify a `character(1)` value as a tag that should be set against a data item.
`assays`	Specify name(s) `character()` of data item(s) against which the tag should be set.

Value

The input `SingleCellExperiment` object with tag information stored in the metadata slot.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- expSetDataTag(sce, "raw", "counts")
```

expTaggedData — *expTaggedData Returns a list of names of data items from the input `SingleCellExperiment` object based upon the input parameters.*

Description

expTaggedData Returns a list of names of data items from the input `SingleCellExperiment` object based upon the input parameters.

Usage

```
expTaggedData(
  inSCE,
  tags = NULL,
  redDims = FALSE,
  recommended = NULL,
  showTags = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`tags`	A `character()` value indicating if the data items should be returned separated by the specified tags. Default is `NULL` indicating that returned names of the data items are simply returned as a list with default tag as "uncategorized".
`redDims`	A `logical` value indicating if `reducedDims` should be returned as well separated with 'redDims' tag.
`recommended`	A `character()` vector indicating the tags that should be displayed as recommended. Default is `NULL`.
`showTags`	A `logical` value indicating if the tags should be shown. If `FALSE`, output is just a simple list, not separated by tags.

Value

A `list` of names of data items specified by the other parameters.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- expSetDataTag(sce, "raw", "counts")
tags <- expTaggedData(sce)
```

`featureIndex` *Retrieve row index for a set of features*

Description

This will return indices of features among the rownames or rowData of a data.frame, matrix, or a SummarizedExperiment object including a SingleCellExperiment. Partial matching (i.e. grepping) can be used by setting `exactMatch = FALSE`.

Usage

```
featureIndex(
  features,
  inSCE,
  by = "rownames",
  exactMatch = TRUE,
  removeNA = FALSE,
  errorOnNoMatch = TRUE,
  warningOnPartialMatch = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

features	Character vector of feature names to find in the rows of inSCE.
inSCE	A data.frame, matrix, or SingleCellExperiment object to search.
by	Character. Where to search for features in inSCE. If set to "rownames" then the features will be searched for among rownames(inSCE). If inSCE inherits from class SummarizedExperiment, then by can be one of the fields in the row annotation data.frame (i.e. one of colnames(rowData(inSCE))).
exactMatch	Boolean. Whether to only identify exact matches or to identify partial matches using grep.
removeNA	Boolean. If set to FALSE, features not found in inSCE will be given NA and the returned vector will be the same length as features. If set to TRUE, then the NA values will be removed from the returned vector. Default FALSE.
errorOnNoMatch	Boolean. If TRUE, an error will be given if no matches are found. If FALSE, an empty vector will be returned if removeNA is set to TRUE or a vector of NA if removeNA is set to FALSE. Default TRUE.
warningOnPartialMatch	Boolean. If TRUE, a warning will be given if some of the entries in features were not found in inSCE. The warning will list the features not found. Default TRUE.

Value

A vector of row indices for the matching features in inSCE.

Author(s)

Yusuke Koga, Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

'retrieveFeatureInfo' from package 'scater' and link{regex} for how to use regular expressions when exactMatch = FALSE.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
ix <- featureIndex(features = c("MT-CYB", "MT-ND2"),
                             inSCE = sce,
                             by = "feature_name")
```

`findMarkerDiffExp` *Find the marker gene set for each cluster With an input SingleCellExperiment object and specifying the clustering labels, this function iteratively call the differential expression analysis on each cluster against all the others.*

Description

Find the marker gene set for each cluster With an input SingleCellExperiment object and specifying the clustering labels, this function iteratively call the differential expression analysis on each cluster against all the others.

Usage

```
findMarkerDiffExp(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  method = c("wilcox", "MAST", "DESeq2", "Limma", "ANOVA"),
  cluster = "cluster",
  covariates = NULL,
  log2fcThreshold = 0.25,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minClustExprPerc = 0.6,
  maxCtrlExprPerc = 0.4,
  minMeanExpr = 0.5
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useAssay`	character. A string specifying which assay to use for the MAST calculations. Default `"logcounts"`.
`method`	A single character for specific differential expression analysis method. Choose from `'wilcox'`, `'MAST'`, `'DESeq2'`, `'Limma'`, and `'ANOVA'`. Default `"wilcox"`.
`cluster`	One single character to specify a column in `colData(inSCE)` for the clustering label. Alternatively, a vector or a factor is also acceptable. Default `"cluster"`.
`covariates`	A character vector of additional covariates to use when building the model. All covariates must exist in `names(colData(inSCE))`. Not applicable when `method` is `"MAST"` method. Default `NULL`.
`log2fcThreshold`	Only out put DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `NULL`
`fdrThreshold`	Only out put DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `1`
`minClustExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the percentage of cells in the cluster of interests that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.7`.

`maxCtrlExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The maximum cutoff of the percentage of cells out of the cluster (control group) that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.4`.
`minMeanExpr`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the mean expression value of the marker in the cluster of interests. Default `1`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `metadata(inSCE)$findMarker` updated with a data.table of the up- regulated DEGs for each cluster.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- findMarkerDiffExp(mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                     useAssay = "logcounts",
                                     cluster = "level1class")
```

`findMarkerTopTable` *Fetch the table of top markers that pass the filtering*

Description

Fetch the table of top markers that pass the filtering

Usage

```
findMarkerTopTable(
  inSCE,
  log2fcThreshold = 1,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minClustExprPerc = 0.7,
  maxCtrlExprPerc = 0.4,
  minMeanExpr = 1,
  topN = 10
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`log2fcThreshold`	Only use DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `1`
`fdrThreshold`	Only use DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `0.05`
`minClustExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the percentage of cells in the cluster of interests that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.7`.

`maxCtrlExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The maximum cutoff of the percentage of cells out of the cluster (control group) that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.4`.
`minMeanExpr`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the mean expression value of the marker in the cluster of interests. Default `1`.
`topN`	An integer. Only to fetch this number of top markers for each cluster in maximum, in terms of log2FC value. Use `NULL` to cancel the top N subscription. Default `10`.

Details

Users have to run `findMarkerDiffExp()` prior to using this function to extract a top marker table.

Value

An organized `data.frame` object, with the top marker gene information.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- findMarkerDiffExp(mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                         useAssay = "logcounts",
                                         cluster = "level1class")
findMarkerTopTable(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)
```

`generateHTANMeta` *Generate HTAN manifest file for droplet and cell count data*

Description

Generate HTAN manifest file for droplet and cell count data

Usage

```
generateHTANMeta(
  dropletSCE = NULL,
  cellSCE = NULL,
  samplename,
  htan_biospecimen_id,
  dir,
  dataType = c("Droplet", "Cell", "Both")
)
```

Arguments

dropletSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object containing droplet count matrix data
cellSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object containing cell count matrix data
samplename	The sample name of the SingleCellExperiment objects
htan_biospecimen_id	The HTAN biospecimen id of the sample in SingleCellExperiment object
dir	The output directory of the SCTK QC pipeline.
dataType	Type of the input data. It can be one of "Droplet", "Cell" or "Both".

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object which combines all objects in sceList. The colData is merged.

---

generateMeta *Generate HTAN manifest file for droplet and cell count data*

Description

Generate HTAN manifest file for droplet and cell count data

Usage

```
generateMeta(
  dropletSCE = NULL,
  cellSCE = NULL,
  samplename,
  dir,
  HTAN = TRUE,
  dataType = c("Droplet", "Cell", "Both")
)
```

Arguments

dropletSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object containing droplet count matrix data
cellSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object containing cell count matrix data
samplename	The sample name of the SingleCellExperiment objects
dir	The output directory of the SCTK QC pipeline.
HTAN	Whether generates manifest file including HTAN specific ID (HTAN Biospecimen ID, HTAN parent file ID and HTAN patient ID). Default is TRUE.
dataType	Type of the input data. It can be one of "Droplet", "Cell" or "Both".

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object which combines all objects in sceList. The colData is merged.

`generateSimulatedData` *Generates a single simulated dataset, bootstrapping from the input counts matrix.*

Description

Generates a single simulated dataset, bootstrapping from the input counts matrix.

Usage

```
generateSimulatedData(totalReads, cells, originalData, realLabels)
```

Arguments

`totalReads`	Numeric. The total number of reads in the simulated dataset, to be split between all simulated cells.
`cells`	Numeric. The number of virtual cells to simulate.
`originalData`	Matrix. The original raw read count matrix. When used within the Shiny app, this will be assay(SCEsetObject, "counts").
`realLabels`	Factor. The condition labels for differential expression. If only two factors present, will default to t-test. If multiple factors, will default to ANOVA.

Value

A simulated counts matrix, the first row of which contains the 'true' labels for each virtual cell.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
res <- generateSimulatedData(
         totalReads = 1000, cells=10,
         originalData = assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts"),
         realLabels = colData(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)[, "level1class"])
```

`getBiomarker` *Given a list of genes and a SingleCellExperiment object, return the binary or continuous expression of the genes.*

Description

Given a list of genes and a SingleCellExperiment object, return the binary or continuous expression of the genes.

Usage

```
getBiomarker(
  inSCE,
  gene,
  binary = "Binary",
  useAssay = "counts",
  featureLocation = NULL,
  featureDisplay = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
gene	gene list
binary	"Binary" for binary expression or "Continuous" for a gradient. Default: "Binary"
useAssay	Indicates which assay to use. The default is "counts".
featureLocation	Indicates which column name of rowData to query gene.
featureDisplay	Indicates which column name of rowData to use to display feature for visualization.

Value

getBiomarker(): A data.frame of expression values

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
getBiomarker(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, gene="C1qa")
```

---

getDEGTopTable *Get Top Table of a DEG analysis*

Description

Users have to run `runDEAnalysis()` first, any of the wrapped functions of this generic function. Users can set further filters on the result. A `data.frame` object, with variables of `Gene`, `Log2_FC`, `Pvalue`, and `FDR`, will be returned.

Usage

```
getDEGTopTable(
  inSCE,
  useResult,
  labelBy = NULL,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = 0.25,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object, with of the singleCellTK DEG method performed in advance.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`labelBy`	A single character for a column of `rowData(inSCE)` as where to search for the labeling text. Default `NULL` for the "rownames".
`onlyPos`	logical. Whether to only fetch DEG with positive log2_FC value. Default `FALSE`.
`log2fcThreshold`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `0.25`.
`fdrThreshold`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `0.05`.
`minGroup1MeanExp`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs with mean expression in group1 greater then this value. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2MeanExp`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs with mean expression in group2 less then this value. Default `NULL`.
`minGroup1ExprPerc`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs expressed in greater then this fraction of cells in group1. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2ExprPerc`	numeric. Only fetch DEGs expressed in less then this fraction of cells in group2. Default `NULL`.

Value

A `data.frame` object of the top DEGs, with variables of `Gene`, `Log2_FC`, `Pvalue`, and `FDR`.

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
sceBatches <- scaterlogNormCounts(sceBatches, "logcounts")
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- runWilcox(sce.w, class = "cell_type", classGroup1 = "alpha",
                   groupName1 = "w.alpha", groupName2 = "w.beta",
                   analysisName = "w.aVSb")
getDEGTopTable(sce.w, "w.aVSb")
```

---

getDiffAbundanceResults

Get/Set diffAbundanceFET result table

Description

Get/Set diffAbundanceFET result table

Usage

```
getDiffAbundanceResults(x, analysisName)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getDiffAbundanceResults(x, analysisName)

getDiffAbundanceResults(x, analysisName) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getDiffAbundanceResults(x, analysisName) <- value
```

Arguments

x	A SingleCellExperiment object.
analysisName	A single character string specifying an analysis performed with diffAbundanceFET
value	The output table of diffAbundanceFET

Value

The differential abundance table for getter method, or update the SCE object with new result for setter method.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- diffAbundanceFET(inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                        cluster = "tissue",
                                        variable = "level1class",
                                        case = "oligodendrocytes",
                                        control = "microglia",
                                        analysisName = "diffAbund")
result <- getDiffAbundanceResults(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "diffAbund")
```

`getEnrichRResult<-` *Get or Set EnrichR Result*

Description

Get or Set EnrichR Result

Usage

```
getEnrichRResult(inSCE, analysisName) <- value

getEnrichRResult(inSCE, analysisName)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getEnrichRResult(inSCE, analysisName)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getEnrichRResult(inSCE, analysisName) <- value
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`analysisName`	A string that identifies each specific analysis
`value`	The EnrichR result table

Value

For getter method, a data.frame of the EnrichR result; For setter method, `inSCE` with EnrichR results updated.

See Also

`runEnrichR`

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
if (Biobase::testBioCConnection()) {
  mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runEnrichR(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, features = "Cmtm5",
                                    db = "GO_Cellular_Component_2017",
                                    analysisName = "analysis1")
  result <- getEnrichRResult(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "analysis1")
}
```

getGenesetNamesFromCollection *List geneset names from geneSetCollection*

Description

List geneset names from geneSetCollection

Usage

```
getGenesetNamesFromCollection(inSCE, geneSetCollectionName)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`geneSetCollectionName`	The name of an imported geneSetCollection.

Value

A character vector of available genesets from the collection.

getMSigDBTable *Shows MSigDB categories*

Description

Returns a data.frame that shows MSigDB categories and subcategories as well as descriptions for each. The entries in the ID column in this table can be used as input for importGeneSetsFromMSigDB.

Usage

```
getMSigDBTable()
```

Value

data.frame, containing MSigDB categories

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromMSigDB for importing MSigDB gene sets.

Examples

```
getMSigDBTable()
```

`getPathwayResultNames` *List pathway analysis result names*

Description

List pathway analysis result names

Usage

```
getPathwayResultNames(inSCE, stopIfNone = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`stopIfNone`	Whether to stop and raise an error if no results found. If `FALSE`, will return an empty character vector.

Details

Pathway analysis results will be stored as matrices in `reducedDims` slot of `inSCE`. This function lists the result names stored in `metadata` slot when analysis is performed.

Value

A character vector of valid pathway analysis result names.

`getSampleSummaryStatsTable`
Stores and returns table of SCTK QC outputs to metadata.

Description

Stores and returns table of QC metrics generated from QC algorithms within the metadata slot of the SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
getSampleSummaryStatsTable(inSCE, statsName, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getSampleSummaryStatsTable(inSCE, statsName, ...)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved assay data and/or colData data. Required.
`statsName`	A `character` value indicating the slot that stores the stats table within the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`...`	Other arguments passed to the function.

Value

A matrix/array object. Contains a summary table for QC statistics generated from SingleCellTK.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- sampleSummaryStats(sce, simple = TRUE, statsName = "qc_table")
getSampleSummaryStatsTable(sce, statsName = "qc_table")
```

getSceParams — *Extract QC parameters from the SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Extract QC parameters from the SingleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
getSceParams(
  inSCE,
  skip = c("scrublet", "runDecontX", "runBarcodeRanksMetaOutput"),
  ignore = c("algorithms", "estimates", "contamination", "z", "sample", "rank",
    "BPPARAM", "batch", "geneSetCollection", "barcodeArgs"),
  directory = "./",
  samplename = "",
  writeYAML = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`skip`	Skip extracting the parameters of the provided QC functions.
`ignore`	Skip extracting the content within QC functions.
`directory`	The output directory of the SCTK_runQC.R pipeline.
`samplename`	The sample name of the SingleCellExperiment objects.
`writeYAML`	Whether output yaml file to store parameters. Default if TRUE. If FALSE, return character object.

Value

If `writeYAML` TRUE, a yaml object will be generated. If FALSE, character object.

`getSeuratVariableFeatures` *Get variable feature names after running runSeuratFindHVG function*

Description

Get variable feature names after running runSeuratFindHVG function

Usage

```
getSeuratVariableFeatures(inSCE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.

Value

A list of variable feature names.

`getSoupX<-` *Get or Set SoupX Result*

Description

S4 method for getting and setting SoupX results that cannot be appended to either `rowData(inSCE)` or `colData(inSCE)`.

S4 method for getting and setting SoupX results that cannot be appended to either `rowData(inSCE)` or `colData(inSCE)`.

Usage

```
getSoupX(inSCE, sampleID, background = FALSE) <- value

getSoupX(inSCE, sampleID = NULL, background = FALSE)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getSoupX(inSCE, sampleID = NULL, background = FALSE)

## S4 replacement method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getSoupX(inSCE, sampleID, background = FALSE) <- value
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. For getter method, `runSoupX` must have been already applied.
`sampleID`	Character vector. For getter method, the samples that should be included in the returned list. Leave this `NULL` for all samples. Default `NULL`. For setter method, only one sample allowed.
`background`	Logical. Whether `background` was applied when running `runSoupX`. Default `FALSE`.
`value`	Dedicated list object of SoupX results.

Value

For getter method, a list with SoupX results for specified samples. For setter method, `inSCE` with SoupX results updated.

For getter method, a list with SoupX results for specified samples. For setter method, `inSCE` with SoupX results updated.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
# SoupX does not work for toy example,
# can be tested with `sce <- importExampleData("pbmc3k")`
sce <- runSoupX(sce, sample = "sample")
soupXResults <- getSoupX(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
# SoupX does not work for toy example,
# can be tested with `sce <- importExampleData("pbmc3k")`
sce <- runSoupX(sce, sample = "sample")
soupXResults <- getSoupX(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`getTopHVG` *getTopHVG Extracts the top variable genes from an input* `SingleCellExperiment` *object. Note that the variability metrics must be computed using the ‘runFeatureSelection‘ method before extracting the feature names of the top variable features. If ‘altExp‘ parameter is a* `character` *value, this function will return the input* `SingleCellExperiment` *object with the subset containing only the top variable features stored as an* `altExp` *slot in returned object. However, if this parameter is set to* `NULL`*, only the names of the top variable features will be returned as a* `character` *vector.*

Description

getTopHVG Extracts the top variable genes from an input `SingleCellExperiment` object. Note that the variability metrics must be computed using the ‘runFeatureSelection‘ method before extracting the feature names of the top variable features. If ‘altExp‘ parameter is a `character` value, this function will return the input `SingleCellExperiment` object with the subset containing only the top variable features stored as an `altExp` slot in returned object. However, if this parameter is set to `NULL`, only the names of the top variable features will be returned as a `character` vector.

Usage

```
getTopHVG(inSCE, method, n = 2000, altExp = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object
`method`	Specify which method to use for variable gene extraction from either Seurat "vst", "mean.var.plot", "dispersion" or Scran "modelGeneVar".
`n`	Specify the number of top variable genes to extract.
`altExp`	A `character` value that specifies the name of the `altExp` slot that should be created to store the subset `SingleCellExperiment` object containing only the top ‘n‘ variable features. Default value is `NULL`, which will not store the subset `SingleCellExperiment` object and instead will only return the names of the top ‘n‘ variable features.

Value

A `character` vector of the top variable feature names or the input `SingleCellExperiment` object with subset of variable features stored as an `altExp` in the object.

Author(s)

Irzam Sarfraz

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
sce_chcl <- scranModelGeneVar(sce_chcl, "counts")
# return top 10 variable genes
topGenes <- getTopHVG(sce_chcl, "modelGeneVar", 10)
```

`getTSCANResults` *getTSCANResults accessor function*

Description

getTSCANResults accessor function

Usage

```
getTSCANResults(x, analysisName = NULL, pathName = NULL)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getTSCANResults(x, analysisName = NULL, pathName = NULL)

getTSCANResults(x, analysisName, pathName = NULL) <- value

## S4 replacement method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
getTSCANResults(x, analysisName, pathName = NULL) <- value

listTSCANResults(x)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
listTSCANResults(x)
```

Arguments

`x`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`analysisName`	Algorithm name implemented
`pathName`	Sub folder name within the `analysisName`
`value`	Value to be stored within the `pathName` or `analysisName`

Value

Get or set TSCAN results

`getTSNE` *Run t-SNE dimensionality reduction method on a SingleCellExperiment Object*

Description

Run t-SNE dimensionality reduction method on a SingleCellExperiment Object

Usage

```
getTSNE(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useAltExp = NULL,
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  reducedDimName = "TSNE",
  nIterations = 1000,
  perplexity = 30,
  run_pca = TRUE,
  ntop = NULL,
  seed = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Assay to use for tSNE computation. If `useAltExp` is specified, `useAssay` has to exist in `assays(altExp(inSCE, useAltExp))`. Default `"logcounts"`
`useAltExp`	The subset to use for tSNE computation, usually for the selected.variable features. Default `NULL`.
`useReducedDim`	The low dimension representation to use for UMAP computation. Default `NULL`.
`reducedDimName`	a name to store the results of the dimension reductions. Default `"TSNE"`.
`nIterations`	maximum iterations. Default `1000`.
`perplexity`	perplexity parameter. Default `30`.
`run_pca`	run tSNE on PCA components? Default `TRUE`.
`ntop`	Number of top features to use as a further variable feature selection. Default `NULL`.
`seed`	Random seed for reproducibility of tSNE results. Default `NULL` will use global seed in use by the R environment.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with tSNE computation updated in `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)`.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
#add a CPM assay
assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "cpm") <- apply(
  assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts"), 2, function(x) {
    x / (sum(x) / 1000000)
  })
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- getTSNE(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, useAssay = "cpm",
                               reducedDimName = "TSNE_cpm",
                               perplexity = NULL)
```

getUMAP — *Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection(UMAP) algorithm for dimension reduction.*

Description

Uniform Manifold Approximation and Projection(UMAP) algorithm for dimension reduction.

Usage

```
getUMAP(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  useAltExp = NULL,
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  sample = NULL,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  logNorm = TRUE,
  nNeighbors = 30,
  nIterations = 200,
  alpha = 1,
  minDist = 0.01,
  spread = 1,
  pca = TRUE,
  initialDims = 25,
  nTop = 2000,
  seed = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Assay to use for UMAP computation. If `useAltExp` is specified, `useAssay` has to exist in `assays(altExp(inSCE, useAltExp))`. Default `"counts"`.
`useAltExp`	The subset to use for UMAP computation, usually for the selected.variable features. Default `NULL`.
`useReducedDim`	The low dimension representation to use for UMAP computation. Default `NULL`.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. If given a single character, will take the annotation from `colData`. Default `NULL`.
`reducedDimName`	A name to store the results of the dimension reduction coordinates obtained from this method. Default `"UMAP"`.
`logNorm`	Whether the counts will need to be log-normalized prior to generating the UMAP via `logNormCounts`. Will not normalize when using `useReducedDim`. Default `TRUE`.

nNeighbors	The size of local neighborhood used for manifold approximation. Larger values result in more global views of the manifold, while smaller values result in more local data being preserved. Default `30`. See '?scater::calculateUMAP' for more information.
nIterations	The number of iterations performed during layout optimization. Default is `200`.
alpha	The initial value of "learning rate" of layout optimization. Default is `1`.
minDist	The effective minimum distance between embedded points. Smaller values will result in a more clustered/clumped embedding where nearby points on the manifold are drawn closer together, while larger values will result on a more even dispersal of points. Default `0.01`. See '?scater::calculateUMAP' for more information.
spread	The effective scale of embedded points. In combination with minDist, this determines how clustered/clumped the embedded points are. Default `1`. See '?scater::calculateUMAP' for more information.
pca	Logical. Whether to perform dimension reduction with PCA before UMAP. Will not perform PCA if using `useReducedDim`. Default `TRUE`
initialDims	Number of dimensions from PCA to use as input in UMAP. Default `25`.
nTop	Number of features with the highest variances to use for dimensionality reduction. Default `2000`.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility of UMAP results. Default `NULL` will use global seed in use by the R environment.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with UMAP computation updated in `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE = sce, useAssay = "counts", reducedDimName = "UMAP")
```

---

importAlevin *Construct SCE object from Salmon-Alevin output*

Description

Construct SCE object from Salmon-Alevin output

Usage

```
importAlevin(
  alevinDir = NULL,
  sampleName = "sample",
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`alevinDir`	Character. The output directory of salmon-Alevin pipeline. It should contain subfolder named 'alevin', which contains the count data which is stored in 'quants_mat.gz'. Default `NULL`.
`sampleName`	Character. A user-defined sample name for the sample to be imported. The 'sampleName' will be appended to the begining of cell barcodes. Default is 'sample'.
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the count matrix, the feature annotations, and the cell annotation (which includes QC metrics stored in 'featureDump.txt').

`importAnnData` *Create a SingleCellExperiment Object from Python AnnData .h5ad files*

Description

This function reads in one or more Python AnnData files in the .h5ad format and returns a single SingleCellExperiment object containing all the AnnData samples by concatenating their counts matrices and related information slots.

Usage

```
importAnnData(
  sampleDirs = NULL,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`sampleDirs` Folder containing the .h5ad file. Can be one of -

- Default `current working directory`.
- Full path to the directory containing the .h5ad file. E.g `sampleDirs = '/path/to/sample'`

	• A vector of folder paths for the samples to import. E.g. `sampleDirs = c('/path/to/sample1', '/path/to/sample2','/path/to/sample3')` importAnnData will return a single SCE object containing all the samples with the sample name appended to each colname in colData
`sampleNames`	The prefix/name of the .h5ad file without the .h5ad extension e.g. if 'sample.h5ad' is the filename, pass `sampleNames = 'sample'`. Can be one of - • Default `sample`. • A vector of samples to import. Length of vector must be equal to length of sampleDirs vector E.g. `sampleDirs = c('sample1', 'sample2','sample3')` importAnnData will return a single SCE object containing all the samples with the sample name appended to each colname in colData
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object. Default `FALSE`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default `"Matrix"`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Details

`importAnnData` converts scRNA-seq data in the AnnData format to the `SingleCellExperiment` object. The .X slot in AnnData is transposed to the features x cells format and becomes the 'counts' matrix in the assay slot. The .vars AnnData slot becomes the SCE rowData and the .obs AnnData slot becomes the SCE colData. Multidimensional data in the .obsm AnnData slot is ported over to the SCE reducedDims slot. Additionally, unstructured data in the .uns AnnData slot is available through the SCE metadata slot. There are 2 currently known minor issues - Anndata python module depends on another python module h5pyto read hd5 format files. If there are errors reading the .h5ad files, such as "ValueError: invalid shape in fixed-type tuple." the user will need to do downgrade h5py by running `pip3 install --user h5py==2.9.0` Additionally there might be errors in converting some python objects in the unstructured data slots. There are no known R solutions at present. Refer `https://github.com/rstudio/reticulate/issues/209`

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object.

Examples

```
file.path <- system.file("extdata/annData_pbmc_3k", package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- importAnnData(sampleDirs = file.path,
                     sampleNames = 'pbmc3k_20by20')

## End(Not run)
```

importBUStools *Construct SCE object from BUStools output*

Description

Read the barcodes, features (genes), and matrix from BUStools output. Import them as one SingleCellExperiment object. Note the cells in the output files for BUStools 0.39.4 are not filtered.

Usage

```
importBUStools(
  BUStoolsDirs,
  samples,
  matrixFileNames = "genes.mtx",
  featuresFileNames = "genes.genes.txt",
  barcodesFileNames = "genes.barcodes.txt",
  gzipped = "auto",
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`BUStoolsDirs`	A vector of paths to BUStools output files. Each sample should have its own path. For example: `./genecount`. Must have the same length as `samples`.
`samples`	A vector of user-defined sample names for the samples to be imported. Must have the same length as `BUStoolsDirs`.
`matrixFileNames`	Filenames for the Market Exchange Format (MEX) sparse matrix files (.mtx files). Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`featuresFileNames`	Filenames for the feature annotation files. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`barcodesFileNames`	Filenames for the cell barcode list file. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`gzipped`	Boolean. `TRUE` if the BUStools output files (barcodes.txt, genes.txt, and genes.mtx) were gzip compressed. `FALSE` otherwise. This is `FALSE` in BUStools 0.39.4. Default `"auto"` which automatically detects if the files are gzip compressed. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray-class object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the count matrix, the gene annotation, and the cell annotation.

Examples

```
# Example #1
# FASTQ files were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/3.0.0
# /pbmc_1k_v3
# They were concatenated as follows:
# cat pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L001_R1_001.fastq.gz pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L002_R1_001.fastq.gz >
# pbmc_1k_v3_R1.fastq.gz
# cat pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L001_R2_001.fastq.gz pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L002_R2_001.fastq.gz >
# pbmc_1k_v3_R2.fastq.gz
# The following BUStools command generates the gene, cell, and
# matrix files

# bustools correct -w ./3M-february-2018.txt -p output.bus | \
#   bustools sort -T tmp/ -t 4 -p - | \
#   bustools count -o genecount/genes \
#     -g ./transcripts_to_genes.txt \
#     -e matrix.ec \
#     -t transcripts.txt \
#     --genecounts -

# The top 20 genes and the first 20 cells are included in this example.
sce <- importBUStools(
  BUStoolsDirs = system.file("extdata/BUStools_PBMC_1k_v3_20x20/genecount/",
    package = "singleCellTK"),
  samples = "PBMC_1k_v3_20x20")
```

`importCellRanger` *Construct SCE object from Cell Ranger output*

Description

Read the filtered barcodes, features, and matrices for all samples from (preferably a single run of) Cell Ranger output. Import and combine them as one big SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
importCellRanger(
  cellRangerDirs = NULL,
  sampleDirs = NULL,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  cellRangerOuts = NULL,
  dataType = c("filtered", "raw"),
  matrixFileNames = "matrix.mtx.gz",
  featuresFileNames = "features.tsv.gz",
  barcodesFileNames = "barcodes.tsv.gz",
  gzipped = "auto",
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)

importCellRangerV2(
  cellRangerDirs = NULL,
  sampleDirs = NULL,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  dataTypeV2 = c("filtered", "raw"),
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  reference = NULL,
  cellRangerOutsV2 = NULL,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)

importCellRangerV3(
  cellRangerDirs = NULL,
  sampleDirs = NULL,
  sampleNames = NULL,
  dataType = c("filtered", "raw"),
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`cellRangerDirs` The root directories where Cell Ranger was run. These folders should contain sample specific folders. Default `NULL`, meaning the paths for each sample will be specified in *samples* argument.

`sampleDirs` Default `NULL`. Can be one of

- `NULL`. All samples within `cellRangerDirs` will be imported. The order of samples will be first determined by the order of `cellRangerDirs` and then by list.dirs. This is only for the case where `cellRangerDirs` is specified.
- A list of vectors containing the folder names for samples to import. Each vector in the list corresponds to samples from one of `cellRangerDirs`. These names are the same as the folder names under `cellRangerDirs`. This is only for the case where `cellRangerDirs` is specified.
- A vector of folder paths for the samples to import. This is only for the case where `cellRangerDirs` is `NULL`.

The cells in the final SCE object will be ordered in the same order of `sampleDirs`.

`sampleNames` A vector of user-defined sample names for the samples to be imported. Must have the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not

	`NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`. Default `NULL`, in which case the folder names will be used as sample names.
`cellRangerOuts`	Character vector. The intermediate paths to filtered or raw cell barcode, feature, and matrix files for each sample. **Supercedes** `dayaType`. If `NULL`, `dataType` will be used to determine Cell Ranger output directory. If not `NULL`, `dataType` will be ingored and `cellRangerOuts` specifies the paths. Must have length 1 or the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`. Reference genome names might need to be appended for CellRanger version below 3.0.0 if reads were mapped to multiple genomes when running Cell Ranger pipeline. Probable options include "outs/filtered_feature_bc_matrix/", "outs/raw_feature_bc_matrix/", "outs/filtered_gene_bc_matrix/", "outs/raw_gene_bc_matrix/".
`dataType`	Character. The type of data to import. Can be one of "filtered" (which is equivalent to `cellRangerOuts = "outs/filtered_feature_bc_matrix/"` or `cellRangerOuts = "outs/filtered_gene_bc_matrix/"`) or "raw" (which is equivalent to `cellRangerOuts = "outs/raw_feature_bc_matrix/"` or `cellRangerOuts = "outs/raw_gene_bc_matrix/"`). Default "filtered" which imports the counts for filtered cell barcodes only.
`matrixFileNames`	Character vector. Filenames for the Market Exchange Format (MEX) sparse matrix files (matrix.mtx or matrix.mtx.gz files). Must have length 1 or the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`.
`featuresFileNames`	Character vector. Filenames for the feature annotation files. They are usually named *features.tsv.gz* or *genes.tsv*. Must have length 1 or the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`.
`barcodesFileNames`	Character vector. Filename for the cell barcode list files. They are usually named *barcodes.tsv.gz* or *barcodes.tsv*. Must have length 1 or the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`.
`gzipped`	`TRUE` if the Cell Ranger output files (barcodes.tsv, features.tsv, and matrix.mtx) were gzip compressed. `FALSE` otherwise. This is true after Cell Ranger 3.0.0 update. Default `"auto"` which automatically detects if the files are gzip compressed. If not `"auto"`, `gzipped` must have length 1 or the same length as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default `"Matrix"`.

`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.
`dataTypeV2`	Character. The type of output to import for Cellranger version below 3.0.0. Whether to import the filtered or the raw data. Can be one of 'filtered' or 'raw'. Default 'filtered'. When `cellRangerOuts` is specified, `dataTypeV2` and `reference` will be ignored.
`reference`	Character vector. The reference genome names. Default `NULL`. If not `NULL`, it must gave the length and order as `length(unlist(sampleDirs))` if `sampleDirs` is not `NULL`. Otherwise, make sure the length and order match the output of `unlist(lapply(cellRangerDirs, list.dirs, recursive = FALSE))`. Only needed for Cellranger version below 3.0.0.
`cellRangerOutsV2`	Character vector. The intermediate paths to filtered or raw cell barcode, feature, and matrix files for each sample for Cellranger version below 3.0.0. If `NULL`, `reference` and `dataTypeV2` will be used to determine Cell Ranger output directory. If it has length 1, it assumes that all samples use the same genome reference and the function will load only filtered or raw data.

Details

`importCellRangerV2` imports output from Cell Ranger V2. `importCellRangerV2Sample` imports output from one sample from Cell Ranger V2. `importCellRangerV3` imports output from Cell Ranger V3. `importCellRangerV3` imports output from one sample from Cell Ranger V3. Some implicit assumptions which match the output structure of Cell Ranger V2 & V3 are made in these 4 functions including `cellRangerOuts`, `matrixFileName`, `featuresFileName`, `barcodesFileName`, and `gzipped`. Alternatively, user can call `importCellRanger` to explicitly specify these arguments.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the combined count matrix, the feature annotations, and the cell annotation.

Examples

```
# Example #1
# The following filtered feature, cell, and matrix files were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/
# 3.0.0/hgmm_1k_v3
# The top 10 hg19 & mm10 genes are included in this example.
# Only the first 20 cells are included.
sce <- importCellRanger(
    cellRangerDirs = system.file("extdata/", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleDirs = "hgmm_1k_v3_20x20",
    sampleNames = "hgmm1kv3",
    dataType = "filtered")
# The following filtered feature, cell, and matrix files were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/
# 2.1.0/pbmc4k
# Top 20 genes are kept. 20 cell barcodes are extracted.
sce <- importCellRangerV2(
    cellRangerDirs = system.file("extdata/", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleDirs = "pbmc_4k_v2_20x20",
    sampleNames = "pbmc4k_20",
    reference = 'GRCh38',
    dataTypeV2 = "filtered")
sce <- importCellRangerV3(
    cellRangerDirs = system.file("extdata/", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleDirs = "hgmm_1k_v3_20x20",
    sampleNames = "hgmm1kv3",
    dataType = "filtered")
```

importCellRangerV2Sample

Construct SCE object from Cell Ranger V2 output for a single sample

Description

Read the filtered barcodes, features, and matrices for all samples from Cell Ranger V2 output. Files are assumed to be named "matrix.mtx", "genes.tsv", and "barcodes.tsv".

Usage

```
importCellRangerV2Sample(
  dataDir = NULL,
  sampleName = NULL,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

dataDir	A path to the directory containing the data files. Default "./".
sampleName	A User-defined sample name. This will be prepended to all cell barcode IDs. Default "sample".
class	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".
delayedArray	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default FALSE.
rowNamesDedup	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default TRUE.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object containing the count matrix, the feature annotations, and the cell annotation for the sample.

Examples

```
sce <- importCellRangerV2Sample(
    dataDir = system.file("extdata/pbmc_4k_v2_20x20/outs/",
        "filtered_gene_bc_matrices/GRCh38", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleName = "pbmc4k_20")
```

---

importCellRangerV3Sample

Construct SCE object from Cell Ranger V3 output for a single sample

---

Description

Read the filtered barcodes, features, and matrices for all samples from Cell Ranger V3 output. Files are assumed to be named "matrix.mtx.gz", "features.tsv.gz", and "barcodes.tsv.gz".

Usage

```
importCellRangerV3Sample(
  dataDir = "./",
  sampleName = "sample",
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

dataDir	A path to the directory containing the data files. Default "./".
sampleName	A User-defined sample name. This will be prepended to all cell barcode IDs. Default "sample".
class	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".
delayedArray	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
rowNamesDedup	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the count matrix, the feature annotations, and the cell annotation for the sample.

Examples

```
sce <- importCellRangerV3Sample(
    dataDir = system.file("extdata/hgmm_1k_v3_20x20/outs/",
        "filtered_feature_bc_matrix", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleName = "hgmm1kv3")
```

`importDropEst` *Create a SingleCellExperiment Object from DropEst output*

Description

imports the RDS file created by DropEst (https://github.com/hms-dbmi/dropEst) and create a SingleCellExperiment object from either the raw or filtered counts matrix. Additionally parse through the RDS to obtain appropriate feature annotations as SCE coldata, in addition to any metadata.

Usage

```
importDropEst(
  sampleDirs = NULL,
  dataType = c("filtered", "raw"),
  rdsFileName = "cell.counts",
  sampleNames = NULL,
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`sampleDirs`	A path to the directory containing the data files. Default "./".
`dataType`	can be "filtered" or "raw". Default `"filtered"`.
`rdsFileName`	File name prefix of the DropEst RDS output. default is "cell.counts"
`sampleNames`	A User-defined sample name. This will be prepended to all cell barcode IDs. Default "sample".
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default `"Matrix"`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Details

`importDropEst` expects either raw counts matrix stored as "cm_raw" or filtered counts matrix stored as "cm" in the DropEst rds output. ColData is obtained from the DropEst corresponding to "mean_reads_per_umi","aligned_reads_per_cell", "aligned_umis_per_cell","requested_umis_per_cb","requested_reads_per
If using filtered counts matrix, the colData dataframe is subset to contain features from the filtered counts matrix alone. If any annotations of ("saturation_info","merge_targets","reads_per_umi_per_cell") are found in the DropEst rds, they will be added to the SCE metadata field

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the count matrix, the feature annotations from DropEst as ColData, and any metadata from DropEst

Examples

```
# Example results were generated as per instructions from the developers of dropEst described in
# https://github.com/hms-dbmi/dropEst/blob/master/examples/EXAMPLES.md
sce <- importDropEst(sampleDirs = system.file("extdata/dropEst_scg71", package = "singleCellTK"),
                     sampleNames = 'scg71')
```

`importExampleData` *Retrieve example datasets*

Description

Retrieves published example datasets stored in SingleCellExperiment using the scRNAseq and TENxPBMCData packages. See 'Details' for a list of available datasets.

Usage

```
importExampleData(
  dataset,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`dataset`	Character. Name of the dataset to retrieve.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of `"Matrix"` or `"matrix"`. `"Matrix"` will store the data as a sparse matrix from package Matrix while `"matrix"` will store the data in a standard matrix. Default `"Matrix"`.
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Details

See the list below for the available datasets and their descriptions.

"fluidigm_pollen" Retrieved with `ReprocessedFluidigmData`. Returns a dataset of 65 human neural cells from Pollen et al. (2014), each sequenced at high and low coverage (SRA accession SRP041736).

"allen_tasic" Retrieved with `ReprocessedAllenData`. Returns a dataset of 379 mouse brain cells from Tasic et al. (2016).

"pbmc3k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 2,700 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

"pbmc4k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 4,340 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

"pbmc6k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 5,419 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

"pbmc8k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 8,381 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

"pbmc33k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 33,148 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

"pbmc68k" Retrieved with `TENxPBMCData`. 68,579 peripheral blood mononuclear cells (PBMCs) from 10X Genomics.

Value

The specified SingleCellExperiment object.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell, David Jenkins

Examples

```
sce <- importExampleData("pbmc3k")
```

`importFromFiles` *Create a SingleCellExperiment object from files*

Description

Create a SingleCellExperiment object from files

Usage

```
importFromFiles(
  assayFile,
  annotFile = NULL,
  featureFile = NULL,
  assayName = "counts",
  inputDataFrames = FALSE,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  annotFileHeader = FALSE,
  annotFileRowName = 1,
  annotFileSep = "\t",
  featureHeader = FALSE,
  featureRowName = 1,
  featureSep = "\t",
  gzipped = "auto",
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`assayFile`	The path to a file in .mtx, .txt, .csv, .tab, or .tsv format.
`annotFile`	The path to a text file that contains columns of annotation information for each cell in the `assayFile`. This file should have the same number of rows as there are columns in the `assayFile`. If multiple samples are represented in the dataset, this should be denoted by a column called `'sample'` within the `annotFile`.
`featureFile`	The path to a text file that contains columns of annotation information for each gene in the count matrix. This file should have the same genes in the same order as `assayFile`. This is optional.
`assayName`	The name of the assay that you are uploading. The default is `"counts"`.
`inputDataFrames`	If `TRUE`, `assayFile`, `annotFile` and `featureFile` should be `data.frames` object (or its inheritance) instead of file paths. The default is `FALSE`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of `"Matrix"` (as returned by readMM function), or `"matrix"` (as returned by matrix function). Default `"Matrix"`.
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`annotFileHeader`	Whether there's a header (colnames) in the cell annotation file. Default is `FALSE`.
`annotFileRowName`	Which column is used as the rownames for the cell annotation file. This should match to the colnames of the `assayFile`. Default is `1` (first column).
`annotFileSep`	Separater used for the cell annotation file. Default is `"\t"`.
`featureHeader`	Whether there's a header (colnames) in the feature annotation file. Default is `FALSE`.
`featureRowName`	Which column is used as the rownames for the feature annotation file. This should match to the rownames of the `assayFile`. Default is `1`. (first column).
`featureSep`	Separater used for the feature annotation file. Default is `"\t"`.
`gzipped`	Whether the input file is gzipped. Default is `"auto"` and it will automatically detect whether the file is gzipped. Other options are `TRUE` or `FALSE`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Details

Creates a SingleCellExperiment object from a counts file in various formats, and files of cell and feature annotation.

Value

a SingleCellExperiment object

---

importGeneSetsFromCollection

Imports gene sets from a GeneSetCollection object

Description

Converts a list of gene sets stored in a GeneSetCollection object and stores it in the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. These gene sets can be used in downstream quality control and analysis functions in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
importGeneSetsFromCollection(
  inSCE,
  geneSetCollection,
  collectionName = "GeneSetCollection",
  by = "rownames"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`geneSetCollection`	A GeneSetCollection object. See GeneSetCollection for more details.
`collectionName`	Character. Name of collection to add gene sets to. If this collection already exists in `inSCE`, then these gene sets will be added to that collection. Any gene sets within the collection with the same name will be overwritten. Default `GeneSetCollection`.
`by`	Character, character vector, or NULL. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in `geneSetCollection` should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. `by` can be a vector the same length as the number of gene sets in the `GeneSetCollection` and the elements of the vector can point to different locations within `inSCE`. Finally, `by` can be `NULL`. In this case, the location of the gene identifiers in `inSCE` should be saved in the description slot for each gene set in the `GeneSetCollection`. See featureIndex for more information. Default `"rownames"`.

Details

The gene identifiers in gene sets in the `GeneSetCollection` will be mapped to the rownames of `inSCE` using the `by` parameter and stored in a GeneSetCollection object from package GSEABase. This object is stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`, which can be accessed in downstream analysis functions such as runCellQC.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with gene set from `collectionName` output stored to the metadata slot.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList for importing from lists, importGeneSetsFromGMT for importing from GMT files, and importGeneSetsFromMSigDB for importing MSigDB gene sets.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
library(GSEABase)
gs1 <- GeneSet(setName = "geneset1", geneIds = rownames(sce)[seq(10)])
gs2 <- GeneSet(setName = "geneset2", geneIds = rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)])
gsc <- GeneSetCollection(list(gs1, gs2))
sce <- importGeneSetsFromCollection(inSCE = sce,
                                    geneSetCollection = gsc,
                                    by = "rownames")
```

`importGeneSetsFromGMT` *Imports gene sets from a GMT file*

Description

Converts a list of gene sets stored in a GMT file into a GeneSetCollection and stores it in the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. These gene sets can be used in downstream quality control and analysis functions in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
importGeneSetsFromGMT(
  inSCE,
  file,
  collectionName = "GeneSetCollection",
  by = "rownames",
  sep = "\t"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`file`	Character. Path to GMT file. See getGmt for more information on reading GMT files.
`collectionName`	Character. Name of collection to add gene sets to. If this collection already exists in `inSCE`, then these gene sets will be added to that collection. Any gene sets within the collection with the same name will be overwritten. Default `GeneSetCollection`.
`by`	Character, character vector, or NULL. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in `geneSetList` should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. `by` can be a vector the same length as the number of gene sets in the GMT file and the elements of the vector can point to different locations within `inSCE`. Finally, `by` can be `NULL`. In this case, the location of the gene identifiers in `inSCE` should be saved in the description (2nd column) of the GMT file. See featureIndex for more information. Default `"rownames"`.
`sep`	Character. Delimiter of the GMT file. Default `"\t"`.

Details

The gene identifiers in gene sets in the GMT file will be mapped to the rownames of `inSCE` using the `by` parameter and stored in a GeneSetCollection object from package GSEABase. This object is stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`, which can be accessed in downstream analysis functions such as runCellQC.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with gene set from `collectionName` output stored to the metadata slot.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList for importing from lists, importGeneSetsFromCollection for importing from GeneSetCollection objects, and importGeneSetsFromMSigDB for importing MSigDB gene sets.

Examples

```
data(scExample)

# GMT file containing gene symbols for a subset of human mitochondrial genes
gmt <- system.file("extdata/mito_subset.gmt", package = "singleCellTK")
```

```
# "feature_name" is the second column in the GMT file, so the ids will
# be mapped using this column in the 'rowData' of 'sce'. This
# could also be accomplished by setting by = "feature_name" in the
# function call.
sce <- importGeneSetsFromGMT(inSCE = sce, file = gmt, by = NULL)
```

`importGeneSetsFromList` *Imports gene sets from a list*

Description

Converts a list of gene sets into a GeneSetCollection and stores it in the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. These gene sets can be used in downstream quality control and analysis functions in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
importGeneSetsFromList(
  inSCE,
  geneSetList,
  collectionName = "GeneSetCollection",
  by = "rownames"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`geneSetList`	Named List. A list containing one or more gene sets. Each element of the list should be a character vector of gene identifiers. The names of the list will be become the gene set names in the GeneSetCollection object.
`collectionName`	Character. Name of collection to add gene sets to. If this collection already exists in `inSCE`, then these gene sets will be added to that collection. Any gene sets within the collection with the same name will be overwritten. Default `GeneSetCollection`.
`by`	Character or character vector. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in `geneSetList` should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. Finally, by can be a vector the same length as the number of gene sets in `geneSetList` and the elements of the vector can point to different locations within `inSCE`. See featureIndex for more information. Default `"rownames"`.

Details

The gene identifiers in gene sets in `geneSetList` will be mapped to the rownames of `inSCE` using the by parameter and stored in a GeneSetCollection object from package GSEABase. This object is stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`, which can be accessed in downstream analysis functions such as runCellQC.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with gene set from `collectionName` output stored to the metadata slot.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromCollection for importing from GeneSetCollection objects, importGeneSets-FromGMT for importing from GMT files, and importGeneSetsFromMSigDB for importing MSigDB gene sets.

Examples

```
data(scExample)

# Generate gene sets from 'rownames'
gs1 <- rownames(sce)[seq(10)]
gs2 <- rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)]
gs <- list("geneset1" = gs1, "geneset2" = gs2)
sce <- importGeneSetsFromList(inSCE = sce,
                              geneSetList = gs,
                              by = "rownames")

# Generate a gene set for mitochondrial genes using
# Gene Symbols stored in 'rowData'
mito.ix <- grep("^MT-", rowData(sce)$feature_name)
mito <- list(mito = rowData(sce)$feature_name[mito.ix])
sce <- importGeneSetsFromList(inSCE = sce,
                             geneSetList = mito,
                             by = "feature_name")
```

---

importGeneSetsFromMSigDB
Imports gene sets from MSigDB

Description

Gets a list of MSigDB gene sets stores it in the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. These gene sets can be used in downstream quality control and analysis functions in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
importGeneSetsFromMSigDB(
  inSCE,
  categoryIDs,
  species = "Homo sapiens",
  mapping = c("gene_symbol", "human_gene_symbol", "entrez_gene"),
  by = "rownames",
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`categoryIDs`	Character vector containing the MSigDB gene set ids. The column `ID` in the table returned by `getMSigDBTable()` shows the list of possible gene set IDs that can be obtained.
`species`	Character. Species available can be found using the function `msigdbr_show_species`. Default `"Homo sapiens"`.
`mapping`	Character. One of "gene_symbol", "human_gene_symbol", or "entrez_gene". Gene identifiers to be used for MSigDB gene sets. IDs denoted by the by parameter must be either in gene symbol or Entrez gene id format to match IDs from MSigDB.
`by`	Character. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in the MSigDB gene sets should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. See featureIndex for more information. Default `"rownames"`.
`verbose`	Boolean. Whether to display progress. Default `TRUE`.

Details

The gene identifiers in gene sets from MSigDB will be retrieved using the `msigdbr` package. They will be mapped to the IDs in `inSCE` using the by parameter and stored in a GeneSetCollection object from package GSEABase. This object is stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`, which can be accessed in downstream analysis functions such as runCellQC.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with gene set from `collectionName` output stored to the metadata slot.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList for importing from lists, importGeneSetsFromGMT for importing from GMT files, and GeneSetCollection objects.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
sce <- importGeneSetsFromMSigDB(inSCE = sce,
                                categoryIDs = "H",
                                species = "Homo sapiens",
                                mapping = "gene_symbol",
                                by = "feature_name")
```

`importMitoGeneSet` *Import mitochondrial gene sets*

Description

Imports mitochondrial gene sets and stores it in the metadata of the SingleCellExperiment object. These gene sets can be used in downstream quality control and analysis functions in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
importMitoGeneSet(
  inSCE,
  reference = "human",
  id = "ensembl",
  by = "rownames",
  collectionName = "human_mito"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`reference`	Character. Species available are "human" and "mouse".
`id`	Types of gene id. Now it supports "symbol", "entrez", "ensembl" and "ensemblTranscriptID".
`by`	Character. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in the mitochondrial gene sets should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. See featureIndex for more information. Default `"rownames"`.
`collectionName`	Character. Name of collection to add gene sets to. If this collection already exists in `inSCE`, then these gene sets will be added to that collection. Any gene sets within the collection with the same name will be overwritten.

Details

The gene identifiers of mitochondrial genes will be loaded with "data(AllMito)". Currently, it supports human and mouse reference. Also, it supports entrez ID, gene symbol, ensemble ID and ensemble transcript ID. They will be mapped to the IDs in `inSCE` using the by parameter and stored in a GeneSetCollection object from package GSEABase. This object is stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`, which can be accessed in downstream analysis functions such as runCellQC.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with gene set from `collectionName` output stored to the metadata slot.

Author(s)

Rui Hong

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList for importing from lists, importGeneSetsFromGMT for importing from GMT files, and GeneSetCollection objects.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
sce <- importMitoGeneSet(inSCE = sce,
                         reference = "human",
                         id = "ensembl",
                         collectionName = "human_mito",
                         by = "rownames")
```

`importMultipleSources` *Imports samples from different sources and compiles them into a list of SCE objects*

Description

Imports samples from different sources and compiles them into a list of SCE objects

Usage

```
importMultipleSources(allImportEntries, delayedArray = FALSE)
```

Arguments

`allImportEntries`	object containing the sources and parameters of all the samples being imported (from the UI)
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.

Value

A list of SingleCellExperiment object containing the droplet or cell data or both,depending on the dataType that users provided.

`importOptimus` *Construct SCE object from Optimus output*

Description

Read the barcodes, features (genes), and matrices from Optimus outputs. Import them as one SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
importOptimus(
  OptimusDirs,
  samples,
  matrixLocation = "call-MergeCountFiles/sparse_counts.npz",
  colIndexLocation = "call-MergeCountFiles/sparse_counts_col_index.npy",
  rowIndexLocation = "call-MergeCountFiles/sparse_counts_row_index.npy",
  cellMetricsLocation = "call-MergeCellMetrics/merged-cell-metrics.csv.gz",
  geneMetricsLocation = "call-MergeGeneMetrics/merged-gene-metrics.csv.gz",
  emptyDropsLocation = "call-RunEmptyDrops/empty_drops_result.csv",
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`OptimusDirs`	A vector of root directories of Optimus output files. The paths should be something like this: `/PATH/TO/bb4a2a5e-ff34-41b6-97d2-0c0c0c534530`. Each entry in `OptimusDirs` is considered a sample and should have its own path. Must have the same length as `samples`.
`samples`	A vector of user-defined sample names for the sample to be imported. Must have the same length as `OptimusDirs`.
`matrixLocation`	Character. It is the intermediate path to the filtered count maxtrix file saved in sparse matrix format (`.npz`). Default `call-MergeCountFiles/sparse_counts.npz` which works for optimus_v1.4.0.
`colIndexLocation`	Character. The intermediate path to the barcode index file. Default `call-MergeCountFiles/sparse_cou`
`rowIndexLocation`	Character. The intermediate path to the feature (gene) index file. Default `call-MergeCountFiles/spars`

`cellMetricsLocation`
: Character. It is the intermediate path to the cell metrics file (`merged-cell-metrics.csv.gz`). Default `call-MergeCellMetrics/merged-cell-metrics.csv.gz` which works for optimus_v1.4.0.

`geneMetricsLocation`
: Character. It is the intermediate path to the feature (gene) metrics file (`merged-gene-metrics.csv.gz`). Default `call-MergeGeneMetrics/merged-gene-metrics.csv.gz` which works for optimus_v1.4.0.

`emptyDropsLocation`
: Character. It is the intermediate path to emptyDrops metrics file (`empty_drops_result.csv`). Default `call-RunEmptyDrops/empty_drops_result.csv` which works for optimus_v1.4.0.

`class`
: Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".

`delayedArray`
: Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.

`rowNamesDedup`
: Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object containing the count matrix, the gene annotation, and the cell annotation.

Examples

```
file.path <- system.file("extdata/Optimus_20x1000",
  package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- importOptimus(OptimusDirs = file.path,
  samples = "Optimus_20x1000")

## End(Not run)
```

`importSEQC` *Construct SCE object from seqc output*

Description

Read the filtered barcodes, features, and matrices for all samples from (preferably a single run of) seqc output. Import and combine them as one big SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
importSEQC(
  seqcDirs = NULL,
  samples = NULL,
  prefix = NULL,
  gzipped = FALSE,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  cbNotFirstCol = TRUE,
  feNotFirstCol = TRUE,
  combinedSample = TRUE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`seqcDirs`	A vector of paths to seqc output files. Each sample should have its own path. For example: `"./pbmc_1k_50x50"`. Must have the same length as `samples`.
`samples`	A vector of user-defined sample names for the samples to be imported. Must have the same length as `seqcDirs`.
`prefix`	A vector containing the prefix of file names within each sample directory. It cannot be null and the vector should have the same length as *samples*.
`gzipped`	Boolean. `TRUE` if the seqc output files (sparse_counts_barcode.csv, sparse_counts_genes.csv, and sparse_molecule_counts.mtx) were gzip compressed. `FALSE` otherwise. Default seqc outputs are not gzipped. Default `FALSE`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of `"Matrix"` (as returned by readMM function), or `"matrix"` (as returned by matrix function). Default `"Matrix"`.
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`cbNotFirstCol`	Boolean. `TRUE` if first column of sparse_counts_barcode.csv is row index and it will be removed. `FALSE` the first column will be kept.
`feNotFirstCol`	Boolean. `TRUE` if first column of sparse_counts_genes.csv is row index and it will be removed. `FALSE` the first column will be kept.
`combinedSample`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, `importSEQC` returns a `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the combined count matrix, feature annotations and the cell annotations. If `FALSE`, `importSEQC` returns a list containing multiple `SingleCellExperiment` objects. Each `SingleCellExperiment` contains count matrix, feature annotations and cell annotations for each sample.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Only applied if `combinedSample` is `TRUE` or only one `seqcDirs` specified. Default `TRUE`.

Details

`importSEQC` imports output from seqc. The default sparse_counts_barcode.csv or sparse_counts_genes.csv from seqc output contains two columns. The first column is row index and the second column is cell-barcode or gene symbol. `importSEQC` will remove first column. Alternatively, user can call `cbNotFirstCol` or `feNotFirstCol` as FALSE to keep the first column of these files. When `combinedSample` is TRUE, `importSEQC` will combined count matrix with genes detected in at least one sample.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the combined count matrix, the feature annotations, and the cell annotation.

Examples

```
# Example #1
# The following filtered feature, cell, and matrix files were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/
# 3.0.0/pbmc_1k_v3
# The top 50 hg38 genes are included in this example.
# Only the top 50 cells are included.
sce <- importSEQC(
    seqcDirs = system.file("extdata/pbmc_1k_50x50", package = "singleCellTK"),
    samples = "pbmc_1k_50x50",
    prefix = "pbmc_1k",
    combinedSample = FALSE)
```

`importSTARsolo` *Construct SCE object from STARsolo outputs*

Description

Read the barcodes, features (genes), and matrices from STARsolo outputs. Import them as one SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
importSTARsolo(
  STARsoloDirs,
  samples,
  STARsoloOuts = "Gene/filtered",
  matrixFileNames = "matrix.mtx",
  featuresFileNames = "features.tsv",
  barcodesFileNames = "barcodes.tsv",
  gzipped = "auto",
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = FALSE,
  rowNamesDedup = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`STARsoloDirs`	A vector of root directories of STARsolo output files. The paths should be something like this: ***/PATH/TO/prefix*Solo.out**. For example: `./Solo.out`. Each sample should have its own path. Must have the same length as `samples`.
`samples`	A vector of user-defined sample names for the sample to be imported. Must have the same length as `STARsoloDirs`.
`STARsoloOuts`	Character vector. The intermediate paths to filtered or raw cell barcode, feature, and matrix files for each of `samples`. Default `"Gene/filtered"` which works for STAR 2.7.3a. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`matrixFileNames`	Filenames for the Market Exchange Format (MEX) sparse matrix file (.mtx file). Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`featuresFileNames`	Filenames for the feature annotation file. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`barcodesFileNames`	Filenames for the cell barcode list file. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`gzipped`	Boolean. `TRUE` if the STARsolo output files (barcodes.tsv, features.tsv, and matrix.mtx) were gzip compressed. `FALSE` otherwise. This is `FALSE` in STAR 2.7.3a. Default `"auto"` which automatically detects if the files are gzip compressed. Must have length 1 or the same length as `samples`.
`class`	Character. The class of the expression matrix stored in the SCE object. Can be one of "Matrix" (as returned by readMM function), or "matrix" (as returned by matrix function). Default "Matrix".
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `FALSE`.
`rowNamesDedup`	Boolean. Whether to deduplicate rownames. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the count matrix, the gene annotation, and the cell annotation.

Examples

```
# Example #1
# FASTQ files were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/3.0.0
# /pbmc_1k_v3
# They were concatenated as follows:
# cat pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L001_R1_001.fastq.gz pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L002_R1_001.fastq.gz >
# pbmc_1k_v3_R1.fastq.gz
# cat pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L001_R2_001.fastq.gz pbmc_1k_v3_S1_L002_R2_001.fastq.gz >
# pbmc_1k_v3_R2.fastq.gz
# The following STARsolo command generates the filtered feature, cell, and
# matrix files
# STAR \
#   --genomeDir ./index \
#   --readFilesIn ./pbmc_1k_v3_R2.fastq.gz \
#                 ./pbmc_1k_v3_R1.fastq.gz \
#   --readFilesCommand zcat \
#   --outSAMtype BAM Unsorted \
#   --outBAMcompression -1 \
#   --soloType CB_UMI_Simple \
#   --soloCBwhitelist ./737K-august-2016.txt \
#   --soloUMIlen 12

# The top 20 genes and the first 20 cells are included in this example.
sce <- importSTARsolo(
  STARsoloDirs = system.file("extdata/STARsolo_PBMC_1k_v3_20x20",
    package = "singleCellTK"),
  samples = "PBMC_1k_v3_20x20")
```

iterateSimulations *Returns significance data from a snapshot.*

Description

Returns significance data from a snapshot.

Usage

```
iterateSimulations(
  originalData,
  useAssay = "counts",
  realLabels,
  totalReads,
  cells,
  iterations
)
```

Arguments

originalData	The SingleCellExperiment object storing all assay data from the shiny app.
useAssay	Character. The name of the assay to be used for subsampling.
realLabels	Character. The name of the condition of interest. Must match a name from sample data.
totalReads	Numeric. The total number of reads in the simulated dataset, to be split between all simulated cells.
cells	Numeric. The number of virtual cells to simulate.
iterations	Numeric. How many times should each experimental design be simulated.

Value

A matrix of significance information from a snapshot

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
res <- iterateSimulations(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, realLabels = "level1class",
                          totalReads = 1000, cells = 10, iterations = 2)
```

---

listSampleSummaryStatsTables

Lists the table of SCTK QC outputs stored within the metadata.

Description

Returns a character vector of the tables within the metadata slot of the SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
listSampleSummaryStatsTables(inSCE, ...)

## S4 method for signature 'SingleCellExperiment'
listSampleSummaryStatsTables(inSCE, ...)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved table within the metadata data. Required.
`...`	Other arguments passed to the function.

Value

A character vector. Contains a list of summary tables within the SingleCellExperiment object.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- sampleSummaryStats(sce, simple = TRUE, statsName = "qc_table")
listSampleSummaryStatsTables(sce)
```

mergeSCEColData *Merging colData from two singleCellExperiment objects*

Description

Merges colData of the singleCellExperiment objects obtained from the same dataset which contain differing colData. (i.e. raw data and filtered data)

Usage

```
mergeSCEColData(inSCE1, inSCE2, id1 = "column_name", id2 = "column_name")
```

Arguments

`inSCE1`	Input SingleCellExperiment object. The function will output this singleCellExperiment object with a combined colData from inSCE1 and inSCE2.
`inSCE2`	Input SingleCellExperiment object. colData from this object will be merged with colData from inSCE1 and loaded into inSCE1.
`id1`	Character vector. Column in colData of inSCE1 that will be used to combine inSCE1 and inSCE2. Default "column_name"
`id2`	Character vector. Column in colData of inSCE2 that will be used to combine inSCE1 and inSCE2. Default "column_name"

Value

SingleCellExperiment object containing combined colData from both singleCellExperiment for samples in inSCE1.

Examples

```
sce1 <- importCellRanger(
    cellRangerDirs = system.file("extdata/", package = "singleCellTK"),
    sampleDirs = "hgmm_1k_v3_20x20",
    sampleNames = "hgmm1kv3",
    dataType = "filtered")
data(scExample)
sce2 <- sce
sce <- mergeSCEColData(inSCE1 = sce1, inSCE2 = sce2, id1 = "column_name", id2 = "column_name")
```

`MitoGenes` *List of mitochondrial genes of multiple reference*

Description

A list of gene set that contains mitochondrial genes of multiple reference (hg38, hg19, mm10 and mm9). It contains multiple types of gene identifier: gene symbol, entrez ID, ensemble ID and ensemble transcript ID. It's used for the function 'importMitoGeneSet'.

Usage

```
data("MitoGenes")
```

Format

A list

Examples

```
data("MitoGenes")
```

`mouseBrainSubsetSCE` *Example Single Cell RNA-Seq data in SingleCellExperiment Object, GSE60361 subset*

Description

A subset of 30 cells from a single cell RNA-Seq experiment from Zeisel, et al. Science 2015. The data was produced from cells from the mouse somatosensory cortex (S1) and hippocampus (CA1). 15 of the cells were identified as oligodendrocytes and 15 of the cell were identified as microglia.

Usage

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
```

Format

SingleCellExperiment

Source

DOI: 10.1126/science.aaa1934

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
```

msigdb_table *MSigDB gene get Category table*

Description

A table of gene set categories that can be download from MSigDB. The categories and descriptions can be found here: https://www.gsea-msigdb.org/gsea/msigdb/collections.jsp. The IDs in the first column can be used to retrieve the gene sets for these categories using the importGeneSetsFromMSigDB function.

Usage

```
data("msigdb_table")
```

Format

A data.frame.

Examples

```
data("msigdb_table")
```

plotBarcodeRankDropsResults *Plots for runEmptyDrops outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runEmptyDrops function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via plots.

Usage

```
plotBarcodeRankDropsResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  titleSize = 18,
  axisLabelSize = 18,
  axisSize = 15,
  legendSize = 15
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runBarcodeRankDrops. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 18.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 18.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 15.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 15.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- runBarcodeRankDrops(inSCE=sce)
plotBarcodeRankDropsResults(inSCE=sce)
```

---

plotBarcodeRankScatter

Plots for runBarcodeRankDrops outputs.

Description

A plotting function which visualizes outputs from the runBarcodeRankDrops function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via scatterplot.

Usage

```
plotBarcodeRankScatter(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 18,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 12,
  axisLabelSize = 15,
  legendSize = 10,
  combinePlot = "none",
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runBarcodeRankDrops. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 18.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 12.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 15.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 10.
`combinePlot`	Boolean. If multiple plots are generated (multiple samples, etc.), will combined plots using ‘cowplot::plot_grid‘.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot. Default TRUE.

Value

a ggplot object of the scatter plot.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- runBarcodeRankDrops(inSCE=sce)
plotBarcodeRankScatter(inSCE=sce)
```

`plotBatchCorrCompare` *Plot comparison of batch corrected result against original assay*

Description

Plot comparison of batch corrected result against original assay

Usage

```
plotBatchCorrCompare(
  inSCE,
  corrMat,
  batch = NULL,
  condition = NULL,
  origAssay = NULL,
  origLogged = NULL,
  method = NULL,
  matType = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`corrMat`	A single character indicating the name of the corrected matrix.
`batch`	A single character. The name of batch annotation column in `colData(inSCE)`.
`condition`	A single character. The name of an additional covariate annotation column in `colData(inSCE)`.
`origAssay`	A single character indicating what the original assay used for batch correction is.
`origLogged`	Logical scalar indicating whether `origAssay` is log-normalized.
`method`	A single character indicating the name of the batch correction method. Only used for the titles of plots.
`matType`	A single character indicating the type of the batch correction result matrix, choose from `"assay"`, `"altExp"`, `"reducedDim"`.

Details

Four plots will be combined. Two of them are violin/box-plots for percent variance explained by the batch variation, and optionally the covariate, for original and corrected. The other two are UMAPs of the original assay and the correction result matrix. If SCTK batch correction methods are performed in advance, this function will automatically detect necessary input. Otherwise, users can also customize the input. Future improvement might include solution to reduce redundant UMAP calculation.

Value

An object of class "gtable", combining four ggplots.

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
sceBatches <- scaterlogNormCounts(sceBatches, "logcounts")
sceBatches <- runLimmaBC(sceBatches)
plotBatchCorrCompare(sceBatches, "LIMMA", condition = "cell_type")
```

`plotBatchVariance` *Plot the percent of the variation that is explained by batch and condition in the data*

Description

Visualize the percent variation in the data that is explained by batch and condition, individually, and that explained by combining both annotations. Plotting only the variation explained by batch is supported but not recommended, because this can be confounded by potential condition.

Usage

```
plotBatchVariance(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = NULL,
  useReddim = NULL,
  useAltExp = NULL,
  batch = "batch",
  condition = NULL,
  title = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useAssay`	A single character. The name of the assay that stores the value to plot. For `useReddim` and `useAltExp` also. Default `NULL`.
`useReddim`	A single character. The name of the dimension reduced matrix that stores the value to plot. Default `NULL`.
`useAltExp`	A single character. The name of the alternative experiment that stores an assay of the value to plot. Default `NULL`.
`batch`	A single character. The name of batch annotation column in `colData(inSCE)`. Default `"batch"`.

`condition`	A single character. The name of an additional condition annotation column in `colData(inSCE)`. Default `NULL`.
`title`	A single character. The title text on the top. Default `NULL`.

Details

When condition and batch both are causing some variation, if the difference between full variation and condition variation is close to batch variation, this might imply that batches are causing some effect; if the difference is much less than batch variation, then the batches are likely to be confounded by the conditions.

Value

A ggplot object of a boxplot of variation explained by batch, condition, and batch+condition.

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
plotBatchVariance(sceBatches,
                  useAssay="counts",
                  batch="batch",
                  condition = "cell_type")
```

`plotBcdsResults` *Plots for runBcds outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runBcds function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotBcdsResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runBcds. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.

`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the 'bin' groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the 'bin' parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 15. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runBcds(sce)
plotBcdsResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")
```

`plotClusterAbundance` *Plot the differential Abundance*

Description

Plot the differential Abundance

Usage

```
plotClusterAbundance(inSCE, cluster, variable, combinePlot = c("all", "none"))
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`cluster`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the cluster label in `colData`.
`variable`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the phenotype labels in `colData`.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all" or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single `ggplot` object. Default `"all"`.

Details

This function will visualize the differential abundance in two given variables, by making bar plots that presents the cell counting and fraction in different cases.

Value

When `combinePlot = "none"`, a `list` with 4 `ggplot` objects; when `combinePlot = "all"`, a single `ggplot` object with for subplots.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
plotClusterAbundance(inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                     cluster = "tissue",
                     variable = "level1class")
```

`plotClusterPseudo` *Run plotClusterPseudo function to plot TSCAN-derived pseudotimes around cluster in the dataset.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the `runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis` function. Each point is a cell in the cluster and is colored by its pseudotime value along the path to which it was assigned.

Usage

```
plotClusterPseudo(inSCE, useClusters, pathIndex = NULL, useReducedDim)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useClusters`	Choose the cluster containing the branch point in the data in order to recompute the pseudotimes so that the root lies at the cluster center, allowing us to detect genes that are associated with the divergence of the branches.
`pathIndex`	Path number for which the pseudotime values should be used. PathIndex corresponds to one path from the root node to one of the terminal nodes.
`useReducedDim`	Saved dimension reduction name in `inSCE`. Required.

Value

A plots with the TSCAN-derived pseudotimes of all the cells along the path belonging to the cluster

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
sce <- runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis(inSCE = sce, useClusters = 5)
plotClusterPseudo(inSCE = sce, useClusters = 5, pathIndex = NULL,
                  useReducedDim = "TSNE")
```

plotCxdsResults *Plots for runCxds outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runCxds function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotCxdsResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runCxds.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.

`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runCxds(sce)
plotCxdsResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")
```

`plotDecontXResults` *Plots for runDecontX outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runDecontX function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotDecontXResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  bgResult = FALSE,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  labelClusters = TRUE,
  clusterLabelSize = 3.5,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runDecontX. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`bgResult`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot decontX results generated with raw/droplet matrix Default FALSE.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".

`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required. Default = "UMAP"
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`labelClusters`	Logical. Whether the cluster labels are plotted. Default FALSE.
`clusterLabelSize`	Numeric. Determines the size of cluster label when ‘labelClusters‘ is set to TRUE. Default 3.5.

`samplePerColumn`
: If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.

`sampleRelHeights`
: If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.

`sampleRelWidths`
: If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runDecontX(sce)
plotDecontXResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="decontX_UMAP")
```

`plotDEGHeatmap` *Heatmap visualization of DEG result*

Description

Heatmap visualization of DEG result

Usage

```
plotDEGHeatmap(
  inSCE,
  useResult,
  doLog = FALSE,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = 0.25,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  useAssay = NULL,
  featureAnnotations = NULL,
  cellAnnotations = NULL,
  featureAnnotationColor = NULL,
  cellAnnotationColor = NULL,
  rowDataName = NULL,
  colDataName = NULL,
  colSplitBy = "condition",
  rowSplitBy = "regulation",
  title = paste0("DE Analysis: ", useResult),
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`doLog`	Logical scalar. Whether to do `log(assay + 1)` transformation on the assay used for the analysis. Default `FALSE`.
`onlyPos`	logical. Whether to only plot DEG with positive log2_FC value. Default `FALSE`.
`log2fcThreshold`	numeric. Only plot DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `0.25`.
`fdrThreshold`	numeric. Only plot DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `0.05`.
`minGroup1MeanExp`	numeric. Only plot DEGs with mean expression in group1 greater then this value. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2MeanExp`	numeric. Only plot DEGs with mean expression in group2 less then this value. Default `NULL`.
`minGroup1ExprPerc`	numeric. Only plot DEGs expressed in greater then this fraction of cells in group1. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2ExprPerc`	numeric. Only plot DEGs expressed in less then this fraction of cells in group2. Default `NULL`.
`useAssay`	character. A string specifying an assay of expression value to plot. By default the assay used for `runMAST()` will be used. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the features going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the cells going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for feature labeling. Should match the entries in the `featureAnnotations` or `rowDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for cell labeling. Should match the entries in the `cellAnnotations` or `colDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.

`rowDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `rowData` that need to be added to the annotation. Default `NULL`.
`colDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `colData` that need to be added to the annotation. Default `NULL`.
`colSplitBy`	character. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `colDataName` or `names(cellAnnotations)`. Default `"condition"`.
`rowSplitBy`	character. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `rowDataName` or `names(featureAnnotations)`. Default `"regulation"`.
`title`	character. Main title of the heatmap. Default `"DE Analysis: <useResult>"`.
`...`	Other arguments passed to `plotSCEHeatmap`

Details

A differential expression analysis function has to be run in advance so that information is stored in the metadata of the input SCE object. This function wraps `plotSCEHeatmap`. A feature annotation basing on the log2FC level called `"regulation"` will be automatically added. A cell annotation basing on the condition selection while running the analysis called `"condition"`, and the annotations used from `colData(inSCE)` while setting the condition and covariates will also be added.

Value

A `ggplot` object

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- runWilcox(sce.w, class = "cell_type", classGroup1 = "alpha",
                   groupName1 = "w.alpha", groupName2 = "w.beta",
                   analysisName = "w.aVSb")
plotDEGHeatmap(sce.w, "w.aVSb")
```

`plotDEGRegression` *Create linear regression plot to show the expression the of top DEGs*

Description

Create linear regression plot to show the expression the of top DEGs

Usage

```
plotDEGRegression(
  inSCE,
  useResult,
  threshP = FALSE,
  labelBy = NULL,
  nrow = 6,
  ncol = 6,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  isLogged = TRUE,
  check_sanity = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`threshP`	logical. Whether to plot threshold values from adaptive thresholding, instead of using the assay used by when performing DE analysis. Default `FALSE`.
`labelBy`	A single character for a column of `rowData(inSCE)` as where to search for the labeling text. Default `NULL`.
`nrow`	Integer. Number of rows in the plot grid. Default `6`.
`ncol`	Integer. Number of columns in the plot grid. Default `6`.
`defaultTheme`	Logical scalar. Whether to use default SCTK theme in ggplot. Default `TRUE`.
`isLogged`	Logical scalar. Whether the assay used for the analysis is logged. If not, will do a `log(assay + 1)` transformation. Default `TRUE`.
`check_sanity`	Logical scalar. Whether to perform MAST's sanity check to see if the counts are logged. Default `TRUE`

Details

Any of the differential expression analysis method from SCTK should be performed prior to using this function

Value

A ggplot object of linear regression

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- runWilcox(sce.w, class = "cell_type", classGroup1 = "alpha",
                   groupName1 = "w.alpha", groupName2 = "w.beta",
                   analysisName = "w.aVSb")
plotDEGRegression(sce.w, "w.aVSb")
```

plotDEGViolin *Generate violin plot to show the expression of top DEGs*

Description

Generate violin plot to show the expression of top DEGs

Usage

```
plotDEGViolin(
  inSCE,
  useResult,
  threshP = FALSE,
  labelBy = NULL,
  nrow = 6,
  ncol = 6,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  isLogged = TRUE,
  check_sanity = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`threshP`	logical. Whether to plot threshold values from adaptive thresholding, instead of using the assay used by `runMAST()`. Default `FALSE`.
`labelBy`	A single character for a column of `rowData(inSCE)` as where to search for the labeling text. Default `NULL`.
`nrow`	Integer. Number of rows in the plot grid. Default `6`.
`ncol`	Integer. Number of columns in the plot grid. Default `6`.
`defaultTheme`	Logical scalar. Whether to use default SCTK theme in ggplot. Default `TRUE`.
`isLogged`	Logical scalar. Whether the assay used for the analysis is logged. If not, will do a `log(assay + 1)` transformation. Default `TRUE`.
`check_sanity`	Logical scalar. Whether to perform MAST's sanity check to see if the counts are logged. Default `TRUE`

Details

Any of the differential expression analysis method from SCTK should be performed prior to using this function

Value

A ggplot object of violin plot

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- runWilcox(sce.w, class = "cell_type", classGroup1 = "alpha",
                   groupName1 = "w.alpha", groupName2 = "w.beta",
                   analysisName = "w.aVSb")
plotDEGViolin(sce.w, "w.aVSb")
```

---

plotDEGVolcano *Generate volcano plot for DEGs*

Description

Generate volcano plot for DEGs

Usage

```
plotDEGVolcano(
  inSCE,
  useResult,
  labelTopN = 10,
  log2fcThreshold = 0.25,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useResult`	character. A string specifying the `analysisName` used when running a differential expression analysis function.
`labelTopN`	Integer, label this number of top DEGs that pass the filters.
`log2fcThreshold`	numeric. Label genes with the absolute values of log2FC greater than this value as regulated. Default `0.25`.
`fdrThreshold`	numeric. Label genes with FDR value less than this value as regulated. Default `0.05`.

Details

Any of the differential expression analysis method from SCTK should be performed prior to using this function to generate volcano plots.

Value

A `ggplot` object of volcano plot

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
sceBatches <- scaterlogNormCounts(sceBatches, "logcounts")
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- runWilcox(sce.w, class = "cell_type", classGroup1 = "alpha",
                   groupName1 = "w.alpha", groupName2 = "w.beta",
                   analysisName = "w.aVSb")
plotDEGVolcano(sce.w, "w.aVSb")
```

---

plotDimRed — *Plot dimensionality reduction from computed metrics including PCA, ICA, tSNE and UMAP*

Description

Plot dimensionality reduction from computed metrics including PCA, ICA, tSNE and UMAP

Usage

```
plotDimRed(
  inSCE,
  useReduction,
  showLegend = FALSE,
  xDim = 1,
  yDim = 2,
  xAxisLabel = NULL,
  yAxisLabel = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SCE object
`useReduction`	Reduction to plot
`showLegend`	If legends should be plotted or not
`xDim`	Numeric value indicating the dimension to use for X-axis. Default is 1 (refers to PC1).
`yDim`	Numeric value indicating the dimension to use for Y-axis. Default is 2 (refers to PC2).
`xAxisLabel`	Specify the label for x-axis. Default is `NULL` which will specify the label as 'x'.
`yAxisLabel`	Specify the label for y-axis. Default is `NULL` which will specify the label as 'y'.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
plotDimRed(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "PCA_logcounts")
```

---

plotDoubletFinderResults

Plots for runDoubletFinder outputs.

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runDoubletFinder function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotDoubletFinderResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runDoubletFinder. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the 'bin' groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the 'bin' parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.

`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runDoubletFinder(sce)
plotDoubletFinderResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")
```

`plotEmptyDropsResults` *Plots for runEmptyDrops outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runEmptyDrops function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via plots.

Usage

```
plotEmptyDropsResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  fdrCutoff = 0.01,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  titleSize = 18,
  axisLabelSize = 18,
  axisSize = 15,
  legendSize = 15,
  legendTitleSize = 16,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = 1,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runScrublet. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`fdrCutoff`	Numeric. Thresholds barcodes based on the FDR values from runEmptyDrops as "Empty Droplet" or "Putative Cell". Default 0.01.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 18.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 18.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 15.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 15.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default 16.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.

`sampleRelHeights`
: If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.

`sampleRelWidths`
: If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- runEmptyDrops(inSCE=sce)
plotEmptyDropsResults(inSCE=sce)
```

`plotEmptyDropsScatter` *Plots for runEmptyDrops outputs.*

Description

A plotting function which visualizes outputs from the runEmptyDrops function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via scatterplot.

Usage

```
plotEmptyDropsScatter(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  fdrCutoff = 0.01,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 18,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 12,
  axisLabelSize = 15,
  legendTitle = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = 12,
  legendSize = 10,
  combinePlot = "none",
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = 1,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runEmptyDrops. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`fdrCutoff`	Numeric. Thresholds barcodes based on the FDR values from runEmptyDrops as "Empty Droplet" or "Putative Cell". Default 0.01.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 18.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 12.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 15.
`legendTitle`	Title of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default 12.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 10.
`combinePlot`	Boolean. If multiple plots are generated (multiple samples, etc.), will combined plots using ‘cowplot::plot_grid‘. Default TRUE.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

a ggplot object of the scatter plot.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- runEmptyDrops(inSCE=sce)
plotEmptyDropsScatter(inSCE=sce)
```

plotMarkerDiffExp *Plot a heatmap to visualize the result of* findMarkerDiffExp

Description

This function will first reads the result saved in metadata slot, named by "findMarker" and generated by findMarkerDiffExp. Then it do the filtering on the statistics based on the input parameters and get unique genes to plot. We choose the genes that are identified as up-regulated only. As for the genes identified as up-regulated for multiple clusters, we only keep the belonging towards the one they have the highest Log2FC value. In the heatmap, there will always be a cell annotation for the cluster labeling used when finding the markers, and a feature annotation for which cluster each gene belongs to. And by default we split the heatmap by these two annotations. Additional legends can be added and the splitting can be canceled.

This function will first reads the result saved in metadata slot, named by "findMarker" and generated by findMarkerDiffExp. Then it do the filtering on the statistics based on the input parameters and get unique genes to plot. We choose the genes that are identified as up-regulated only. As for the genes identified as up-regulated for multiple clusters, we only keep the belonging towards the one they have the highest Log2FC value. In the heatmap, there will always be a cell annotation for the cluster labeling used when finding the markers, and a feature annotation for which cluster each gene belongs to. And by default we split the heatmap by these two annotations. Additional legends can be added and the splitting can be canceled.

Usage

```
plotMarkerDiffExp(
  inSCE,
  orderBy = "size",
  log2fcThreshold = 1,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minClustExprPerc = 0.7,
  maxCtrlExprPerc = 0.4,
  minMeanExpr = 1,
  topN = 10,
  decreasing = TRUE,
  rowDataName = NULL,
  colDataName = NULL,
  featureAnnotations = NULL,
  cellAnnotations = NULL,
  featureAnnotationColor = NULL,
  cellAnnotationColor = NULL,
 colSplitBy = ifelse(is.null(orderBy), NULL, colnames(inSCE@metadata$findMarker)[5]),
  rowSplitBy = "marker",
  rowDend = FALSE,
  colDend = FALSE,
  title = "Top Marker Heatmap",
  ...
)

plotMarkerDiffExp(
  inSCE,
  orderBy = "size",
  log2fcThreshold = 1,
  fdrThreshold = 0.05,
  minClustExprPerc = 0.7,
  maxCtrlExprPerc = 0.4,
  minMeanExpr = 1,
  topN = 10,
  decreasing = TRUE,
  rowDataName = NULL,
  colDataName = NULL,
  featureAnnotations = NULL,
  cellAnnotations = NULL,
  featureAnnotationColor = NULL,
  cellAnnotationColor = NULL,
 colSplitBy = ifelse(is.null(orderBy), NULL, colnames(inSCE@metadata$findMarker)[5]),
  rowSplitBy = "marker",
  rowDend = FALSE,
  colDend = FALSE,
  title = "Top Marker Heatmap",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`orderBy`	The ordering method of the clusters on the splitted heatmap. Can be chosen from `"size"` or `"name"`, specified with vector of ordered unique cluster labels, or set as `NULL` for unsplitted heatmap. Default `"size"`.
`log2fcThreshold`	Only use DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `1`
`fdrThreshold`	Only use DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `0.05`
`minClustExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the percentage of cells in the cluster of interests that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.7`.
`maxCtrlExprPerc`	A numeric scalar. The maximum cutoff of the percentage of cells out of the cluster (control group) that expressed the marker gene. Default `0.4`.
`minMeanExpr`	A numeric scalar. The minimum cutoff of the mean expression value of the marker in the cluster of interests. Default `1`.
`topN`	An integer. Only to plot this number of top markers for each cluster in maximum, in terms of log2FC value. Use `NULL` to cancel the top N subscription. Default `10`.

`decreasing`	Order the cluster decreasingly. Default `TRUE`.
`rowDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `rowData` that need to be added to the annotation. Default `NULL`.
`colDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `colData` that need to be added to the annotation. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the features going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the cells going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for feature labeling. Should match the entries in the `featureAnnotations` or `rowDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for cell labeling. Should match the entries in the `cellAnnotations` or `colDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.
`colSplitBy`	character vector. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `colDataName` or `names(cellAnnotations)`. Default is the value of `cluster` in `findMarkerDiffExp` when `orderBy` is not `NULL`, or `NULL` otherwise.
`rowSplitBy`	character vector. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `rowDataName` or `names(featureAnnotations)`. Default `"marker"`, which indicates an auto generated annotation for this plot.
`rowDend`	Whether to display row dendrogram. Default `FALSE`.
`colDend`	Whether to display column dendrogram. Default `FALSE`.
`title`	Text of the title, at the top of the heatmap. Default `"Top Marker Heatmap"`.
`...`	Other arguments passed to `plotSCEHeatmap`.

Value

A `Heatmap` object

A `Heatmap` object

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

Yichen Wang

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- findMarkerDiffExp(sce.w, method = "wilcox", cluster = "cell_type")
plotMarkerDiffExp(sce.w)
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sce.w <- subsetSCECols(sceBatches, colData = "batch == 'w'")
sce.w <- findMarkerDiffExp(sce.w, method = "wilcox", cluster = "cell_type")
plotMarkerDiffExp(sce.w)
```

---

plotMASTThresholdGenes

MAST Identify adaptive thresholds

Description

Calculate and produce a list of thresholded counts (on natural scale), thresholds, bins, densities estimated on each bin, and the original data from `thresholdSCRNACountMatrix`

Usage

```
plotMASTThresholdGenes(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  doPlot = TRUE,
  isLogged = TRUE,
  check_sanity = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment object
`useAssay`	character, default `"logcounts"`
`doPlot`	Logical scalar. Whether to directly plot in the plotting area. If `FALSE`, will return a graphical object which can be visualized with `grid.draw()`. Default `TRUE`.
`isLogged`	Logical scalar. Whether the assay used for the analysis is logged. If not, will do a `log(assay + 1)` transformation. Default `TRUE`.
`check_sanity`	Logical scalar. Whether to perform MAST's sanity check to see if the counts are logged. Default `TRUE`

Value

Plot the thresholding onto the plotting region if `plot == TRUE` or a graphical object if `plot == FALSE`.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotMASTThresholdGenes(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)
```

plotPathway *Generate violin plots for pathway analysis results*

Description

Generate violin plots for pathway analysis results

Usage

```
plotPathway(
  inSCE,
  resultName,
  geneset,
  groupBy = NULL,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  violin = TRUE,
  dots = TRUE,
  summary = "median",
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  title = geneset,
  titleSize = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object. With `runGSVA()` or `runVAM()` applied in advance.
resultName	A single character of the name of a score matrix, which should be found in `getPathwayResultNames(inSCE)`.
geneset	A single character specifying the geneset of interest. Should be found in the geneSetCollection used for performing the analysis.
groupBy	Either a single character specifying a column of `colData(inSCE)` or a vector of equal length as the number of cells. Default `NULL`.
boxplot	Boolean, Whether to add a boxplot. Default `FALSE`.
violin	Boolean, Whether to add a violin plot. Default `TRUE`.
dots	Boolean, If `TRUE`, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default `TRUE`.
summary	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are `"mean"` or `"median"`, and `NULL` for not adding. Default `"median"`.
axisSize	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default `10`.

`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default `10`.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default `0.5`.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default `1`.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to `10` when `TRUE`. Default `TRUE`.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if `TRUE`. Will still be drawn even if `defaultTheme` is `TRUE`. Default `FALSE`.
`title`	Title of plot. Default using `geneset`.
`titleSize`	Size of the title of the plot. Default `15`.

Details

`runGSVA()` or `runVAM()` should be applied in advance of using this function. Users can group the data by specifying `groupby`.

Value

A `ggplot` object for the violin plot

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
gs1 <- rownames(sce)[seq(10)]
gs2 <- rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)]
gs <- list("geneset1" = gs1, "geneset2" = gs2)
sce <- importGeneSetsFromList(inSCE = sce, geneSetList = gs,
                              by = "rownames")
sce <- runVAM(inSCE = sce, geneSetCollectionName = "GeneSetCollection",
              useAssay = "logcounts")
plotPathway(sce, "VAM_GeneSetCollection_CDF", "geneset1")
```

`plotPCA` *Plot PCA run data from its components.*

Description

Plot PCA run data from its components.

Usage

```
plotPCA(
  inSCE,
  colorBy = "No Color",
  shape = "No Shape",
  pcX = "PC1",
  pcY = "PC2",
  reducedDimName = "PCA",
  runPCA = FALSE,
  useAssay = "logcounts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`colorBy`	The variable to color clusters by
`shape`	Shape of the points
`pcX`	User choice for the first principal component
`pcY`	User choice for the second principal component
`reducedDimName`	a name to store the results of the dimension reduction coordinates obtained from this method. This is stored in the SingleCellExperiment object in the reducedDims slot. Required.
`runPCA`	Run PCA if the reducedDimName does not exist. the Default is FALSE.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. The default is "logcounts".

Value

A PCA plot

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotPCA(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, colorBy = "level1class",
       reducedDimName = "PCA_counts")
```

`plotRunPerCellQCResults` *Plots for runPerCellQC outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runPerCellQC function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotRunPerCellQCResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  baseSize = 15,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  titleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = 1,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runPerCellQC. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default FALSE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default "median".
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 15. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.

`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runPerCellQC(sce)
plotRunPerCellQCResults(inSCE=sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`plotScDblFinderResults` *Plots for runScDblFinder outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runScDblFinder function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotScDblFinderResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runScDblFinder. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.

`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.

`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runScDblFinder(sce)
plotScDblFinderResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")
```

`plotScdsHybridResults` *Plots for runCxdsBcdsHybrid outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runCxdsBcdsHybrid function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotScdsHybridResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runCxdsBcdsHybrid. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.

`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the 'bin' groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the 'bin' parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runCxdsBcdsHybrid(sce)
plotScdsHybridResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")
```

plotSCEBarAssayData *Bar plot of assay data.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the assay slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a bar plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEBarAssayData(
  inSCE,
  feature,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  featureLocation = NULL,
  featureDisplay = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  combinePlot = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`feature`	Name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. Default "counts".
`featureLocation`	Indicates which column name of rowData to query gene.
`featureDisplay`	Indicates which column name of rowData to use to display feature for visualization.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.

`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`combinePlot`	Boolean. If multiple plots are generated (multiple samples, etc.), will combined plots using ‘cowplot::plot_grid‘. Default TRUE.

Value

a ggplot of the barplot of assay data.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEBarAssayData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  feature = "Apoe", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

`plotSCEBarColData` *Bar plot of colData.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the colData slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a bar plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEBarColData(
  inSCE,
  coldata,
  sample = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  dots = TRUE,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  combinePlot = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`coldata`	colData value that will be plotted.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`combinePlot`	Boolean. If multiple plots are generated (multiple samples, etc.), will combined plots using ‘cowplot::plot_grid‘. Default TRUE.

Value

a ggplot of the barplot of coldata.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEBarColData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  coldata = "age", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

---

plotSCEBatchFeatureMean *Plot mean feature value in each batch of a SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Plot mean feature value in each batch of a SingleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
plotSCEBatchFeatureMean(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = NULL,
  useReddim = NULL,
  useAltExp = NULL,
  batch = "batch",
  xlab = "batch",
  ylab = "Feature Mean",
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useAssay`	A single character. The name of the assay that stores the value to plot. For `useReddim` and `useAltExp` also. Default `NULL`.
`useReddim`	A single character. The name of the dimension reduced matrix that stores the value to plot. Default `NULL`.
`useAltExp`	A single character. The name of the alternative experiment that stores an assay of the value to plot. Default `NULL`.
`batch`	A single character. The name of batch annotation column in `colData(inSCE)`. Default `"batch"`.
`xlab`	label for x-axis. Default `"batch"`.
`ylab`	label for y-axis. Default `"Feature Mean"`.
`...`	Additional arguments passed to `.ggViolin`.

Value

ggplot

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
plotSCEBatchFeatureMean(sceBatches, useAssay = "counts")
```

`plotSCEDensity` *Density plot of any data stored in the SingleCellExperiment object.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in any slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a densityn plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEDensity(
  inSCE,
  slotName,
  itemName,
  sample = NULL,
  feature = NULL,
  dimension = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 18,
  cutoff = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
slotName	Desired slot of SingleCellExperiment used for plotting. Possible options: "assays", "colData", "metadata", "reducedDims". Required.
itemName	Desired vector within the slot used for plotting. Required.
sample	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.

`feature`	Desired name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object. Only used when "assays" slotName is selected. Default NULL.
`dimension`	Desired dimension stored in the specified reducedDims. Either an integer which indicates the column or a character vector specifies column name. By default, the 1st dimension/column will be used. Only used when "reducedDims" slotName is selected. Default NULL.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`cutoff`	Numeric value. The plot will be annotated with a vertical line if set. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot object of the density plot.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEDensity(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, slotName = "assays",
  itemName = "counts", feature = "Apoe", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

`plotSCEDensityAssayData` *Density plot of assay data.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the assay slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a density plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEDensityAssayData(
  inSCE,
  feature,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  featureLocation = NULL,
  featureDisplay = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  cutoff = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 18,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`feature`	Name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. Default "counts".
`featureLocation`	Indicates which column name of rowData to query gene.
`featureDisplay`	Indicates which column name of rowData to use to display feature for visualization.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`cutoff`	Numeric value. The plot will be annotated with a vertical line if set. Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.

`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the density plot of assay data.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEDensityAssayData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  feature = "Apoe"
)
```

`plotSCEDensityColData` *Density plot of colData.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the colData slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a density plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEDensityColData(
  inSCE,
  coldata,
  sample = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 18,
  cutoff = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`coldata`	colData value that will be plotted.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`cutoff`	Numeric value. The plot will be annotated with a vertical line if set. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the density plot of colData.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEDensityColData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  coldata = "age", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

plotSCEDimReduceColData

Dimension reduction plot tool for colData

Description

Plot results of reduced dimensions data and colors by annotation data stored in the colData slot.

Usage

```
plotSCEDimReduceColData(
  inSCE,
  colorBy,
  reducedDimName,
  sample = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  conditionClass = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  colorScale = NULL,
  colorLow = "white",
  colorMid = "gray",
  colorHigh = "blue",
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 15,
  labelClusters = TRUE,
  clusterLabelSize = 3.5,
  legendTitle = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`colorBy`	Color by a condition(any column of the annotation data). Required.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction matrix name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`groupBy`	Group by a condition(any column of the annotation data). Default NULL.
`conditionClass`	Class of the annotation data used in colorBy. Options are NULL, "factor" or "numeric". If NULL, class will default to the original class. Default NULL.
`shape`	Add shapes to each condition.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`colorScale`	Vector. Needs to be same length as the number of unique levels of colorBy. Will be used only if conditionClass = "factor" or "character". Default NULL.
`colorLow`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the lowest values on the scale. Default ’white’.
`colorMid`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the midpoint on the scale. Default ’gray’.
`colorHigh`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the highest values on the scale. Default ’blue’.
`defaultTheme`	adds grid to plot when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.

`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`labelClusters`	Logical. Whether the cluster labels are plotted.
`clusterLabelSize`	Numeric. Determines the size of cluster label when ‘labelClusters‘ is set to TRUE. Default 3.5.
`legendTitle`	title of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default 12.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL. Default FALSE.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimension plot of coldata.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEDimReduceColData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, colorBy = "tissue",
  shape = NULL, conditionClass = "factor",
  reducedDimName = "TSNE_counts",
  xlab = "tSNE1", ylab = "tSNE2", labelClusters = TRUE
)

plotSCEDimReduceColData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, colorBy = "age",
  shape = NULL, conditionClass = "numeric",
  reducedDimName = "TSNE_counts", bin = c(-Inf, 20, 25, +Inf),
  xlab = "tSNE1", ylab = "tSNE2", labelClusters = FALSE
)
```

`plotSCEDimReduceFeatures` *Dimension reduction plot tool for assay data*

Description

Plot results of reduced dimensions data and colors by feature data stored in the assays slot.

Usage

```
plotSCEDimReduceFeatures(
  inSCE,
  feature,
  reducedDimName,
  sample = NULL,
  featureLocation = NULL,
  featureDisplay = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  colorLow = "white",
  colorMid = "gray",
  colorHigh = "blue",
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 15,
  legendTitle = NULL,
  legendSize = 10,
  legendTitleSize = 12,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`feature`	Name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object.
`reducedDimName`	saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`featureLocation`	Indicates which column name of rowData to query gene.
`featureDisplay`	Indicates which column name of rowData to use to display feature for visualization.
`shape`	add shapes to each condition. Default NULL.

`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. The default is "logcounts"
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the ‘bin‘ parameter. Default NULL.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`colorLow`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the lowest values on the scale. Default ’white’.
`colorMid`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the midpoint on the scale. Default ’gray’.
`colorHigh`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. The color will be used to signify the highest values on the scale. Default ’blue’.
`defaultTheme`	adds grid to plot when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`legendTitle`	title of legend. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 10.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default 12.
`groupBy`	Facet wrap the scatterplot based on value. Default `NULL`.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimension plot of feature data.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEDimReduceFeatures(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, feature = "Apoe",
  shape = NULL, reducedDimName = "TSNE_counts",
  useAssay = "counts", xlab = "tSNE1", ylab = "tSNE2"
)
```

`plotSCEHeatmap` *Plot heatmap of using data stored in SingleCellExperiment Object*

Description

Plot heatmap of using data stored in SingleCellExperiment Object

Usage

```
plotSCEHeatmap(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  doLog = FALSE,
  featureIndex = NULL,
  cellIndex = NULL,
  scale = TRUE,
  trim = c(-2, 2),
  featureIndexBy = "rownames",
  cellIndexBy = "rownames",
  rowDataName = NULL,
  colDataName = NULL,
  featureAnnotations = NULL,
  cellAnnotations = NULL,
  featureAnnotationColor = NULL,
  cellAnnotationColor = NULL,
  rowSplitBy = NULL,
  colSplitBy = NULL,
  rowLabel = FALSE,
  colLabel = FALSE,
  rowLabelSize = 8,
  colLabelSize = 8,
  rowDend = TRUE,
  colDend = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  rowTitle = "Genes",
  colTitle = "Cells",
  rowGap = grid::unit(0, "mm"),
  colGap = grid::unit(0, "mm"),
  border = FALSE,
  colorScheme = NULL,
  ...
)

plotSCEDimReduceHeatmap(
  inSCE,
  useReducedDim,
  featureIndex = NULL,
  cellIndex = NULL,
  doLog = FALSE,
  scale = FALSE,
  trim = c(-2, 2),
  cellIndexBy = "rownames",
  colDataName = NULL,
  featureAnnotations = NULL,
  cellAnnotations = NULL,
  featureAnnotationColor = NULL,
  cellAnnotationColor = NULL,
  rowSplitBy = NULL,
  colSplitBy = NULL,
  rowLabel = FALSE,
  colLabel = FALSE,
  rowLabelSize = 8,
  colLabelSize = 8,
  rowDend = TRUE,
  colDend = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  rowTitle = "Dimensions",
  colTitle = "Cells",
  rowGap = grid::unit(0, "mm"),
  colGap = grid::unit(0, "mm"),
  border = FALSE,
  colorScheme = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useAssay`	character. A string indicating the assay name that provides the expression level to plot. Only for `plotSCEHeatmap`.
`doLog`	Logical scalar. Whether to do `log(assay + 1)` transformation on the assay indicated by `useAssay`. Default `FALSE`.
`featureIndex`	A vector that can subset the input SCE object by rows (features). Alternatively, it can be a vector identifying features in another feature list indicated by `featureIndexBy`. Default `NULL`.
`cellIndex`	A vector that can subset the input SCE object by columns (cells). Alternatively, it can be a vector identifying cells in another cell list indicated by `featureIndexBy`.

	Default `NULL`.
`scale`	Whether to perform z-score scaling on each row. Default `TRUE`.
`trim`	A 2-element numeric vector. Values outside of this range will be trimmed to their nearst bound. Default `c(-2, 2)`
`featureIndexBy`	A single character specifying a column name of `rowData(inSCE)`, or a vector of the same length as `nrow(inSCE)`, where we search for the non-rowname feature indices. Not applicable for `plotSCEDimReduceHeatmap`. Default `"rownames"`.
`cellIndexBy`	A single character specifying a column name of `colData(inSCE)`, or a vector of the same length as `ncol(inSCE)`, where we search for the non-rowname cell indices. Default `"rownames"`.
`rowDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `rowData` that need to be added to the annotation. Not applicable for `plotSCEDimReduceHeatmap`. Default `NULL`.
`colDataName`	character. The column name(s) in `colData` that need to be added to the annotation. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the features going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotations`	`data.frame`, with `rownames` containing all the cells going to be plotted. Character columns should be factors. Default `NULL`.
`featureAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for feature labeling. Should match the entries in the `featureAnnotations` or `rowDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.
`cellAnnotationColor`	A named list. Customized color settings for cell labeling. Should match the entries in the `cellAnnotations` or `colDataName`. For each entry, there should be a list/vector of colors named with categories. Default `NULL`.
`rowSplitBy`	character. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `rowDataName` or `names(featureAnnotations)`. Default `NULL`.
`colSplitBy`	character. Do semi-heatmap based on the grouping of this(these) annotation(s). Should exist in either `colDataName` or `names(cellAnnotations)`. Default `NULL`.
`rowLabel`	Use a logical for whether to display all the feature names, a single character to display a column of `rowData(inSCE)` annotation, a vector of the same length as full/subset `nrow(inSCE)` to display customized info. Default `FALSE`.
`colLabel`	Use a logical for whether to display all the cell names, a single character to display a column of `colData(inSCE)` annotation, a vector of the same length as full/subset `ncol(inSCE)` to display customized info. Default `FALSE`.
`rowLabelSize`	A number for the font size of feature names. Default `8`
`colLabelSize`	A number for the font size of cell names. Default `8`
`rowDend`	Whether to display row dendrogram. Default `TRUE`.
`colDend`	Whether to display column dendrogram. Default `TRUE`.

`title`	The main title of the whole plot. Default `NULL`.
`rowTitle`	The subtitle for the rows. Default `"Genes"`.
`colTitle`	The subtitle for the columns. Default `"Cells"`.
`rowGap`	A numeric value or a `unit` object. For the gap size between rows of the splitted heatmap. Default `grid::unit(0, 'mm')`.
`colGap`	A numeric value or a `unit` object. For the gap size between columns of the splitted heatmap. Default `grid::unit(0, 'mm')`.
`border`	A logical scalar. Whether to show the border of the heatmap or splitted heatmaps. Default `TRUE`.
`colorScheme`	function. A function that generates color code by giving a value. Can be generated by `colorRamp2`. Default `NULL`.
`...`	Other arguments passed to `Heatmap`.
`useReducedDim`	character. A string indicating the reducedDim name that provides the expression level to plot. Only for `plotSCEDimReduceHeatmap`.

Value

A `ggplot` object.

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
plotSCEHeatmap(sce[1:3,1:3], useAssay = "counts")
```

`plotSCEScatter` *Dimension reduction plot tool for all types of data*

Description

Plot results of reduced dimensions data of counts stored in any slot in the SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
plotSCEScatter(
  inSCE,
  annotation,
  reducedDimName = NULL,
  slot = NULL,
  sample = NULL,
  feature = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  conditionClass = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  colorLow = "white",
  colorMid = "gray",
  colorHigh = "blue",
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = 15,
  labelClusters = TRUE,
  legendTitle = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = 12,
  legendSize = 10,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`annotation`	Desired vector within the slot used for plotting. Default NULL.
`reducedDimName`	saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object.
`slot`	Desired slot of SingleCellExperiment used for plotting. Possible options: "assays", "colData", "metadata", "reducedDims". Default NULL.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`feature`	name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object. Will be used only if "assays" slot is chosen. Default NULL.
`groupBy`	Group by a condition(any column of the annotation data). Default NULL.
`shape`	add shapes to each condition.
`conditionClass`	class of the annotation data used in colorBy. Options are NULL, "factor" or "numeric". If NULL, class will default to the original class. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.

`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the 'bin' groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.
`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the 'bin' parameter. Default NULL.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`colorLow`	Character. A color available from 'colors()'. The color will be used to signify the lowest values on the scale. Default 'white'.
`colorMid`	Character. A color available from 'colors()'. The color will be used to signify the midpoint on the scale. Default 'gray'.
`colorHigh`	Character. A color available from 'colors()'. The color will be used to signify the highest values on the scale. Default 'blue'.
`defaultTheme`	adds grid to plot when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`labelClusters`	Logical. Whether the cluster labels are plotted.
`legendTitle`	title of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default 12.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default 10.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the reduced dimensions.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEScatter(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, legendTitle = NULL,
  slot = "assays", annotation = "counts", feature = "Apoe",
  reducedDimName = "TSNE_counts", labelClusters = FALSE
)
```

plotSCEViolin — *Violin plot of any data stored in the SingleCellExperiment object.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in any slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a violin plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEViolin(
  inSCE,
  slotName,
  itemName,
  feature = NULL,
  sample = NULL,
  dimension = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = TRUE,
  dots = TRUE,
  plotOrder = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  hcutoff = NULL,
  hcolor = "red",
  hsize = 1,
  hlinetype = 1,
  vcutoff = NULL,
  vcolor = "red",
  vsize = 1,
  vlinetype = 1,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.

`slotName`	Desired slot of SingleCellExperiment used for plotting. Possible options: "assays", "colData", "metadata", "reducedDims". Required.
`itemName`	Desired vector within the slot used for plotting. Required.
`feature`	Desired name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object. Only used when "assays" slotName is selected. Default NULL.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`dimension`	Desired dimension stored in the specified reducedDims. Either an integer which indicates the column or a character vector specifies column name. By default, the 1st dimension/column will be used. Only used when "reducedDims" slotName is selected. Default NULL.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`plotOrder`	Character vector. If set, reorders the violin plots in the order of the character vector when ‘groupBy‘ is set. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`hcutoff`	Adds a horizontal line with the y-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`hcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the horizontal cutoff line, if drawn. Default 'black'.
`hsize`	Size of horizontal line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`hlinetype`	Type of horizontal line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`vcutoff`	Adds a vertical line with the x-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`vcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the vertical cutoff line, if drawn. Default 'black'.

`vsize`	Size of vertical line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`vlinetype`	Type of vertical line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the violin plot.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEViolin(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE, slotName = "assays",
  itemName = "counts", feature = "Apoe", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

`plotSCEViolinAssayData` *Violin plot of assay data.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the assay slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a violin plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEViolinAssayData(
  inSCE,
  feature,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  featureLocation = NULL,
  featureDisplay = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = TRUE,
  dots = TRUE,
  plotOrder = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  axisSize = 10,
  axisLabelSize = 10,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  hcutoff = NULL,
  hcolor = "red",
  hsize = 1,
  hlinetype = 1,
  vcutoff = NULL,
  vcolor = "red",
  vsize = 1,
  vlinetype = 1,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`feature`	Name of feature stored in assay of SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. Default "counts".
`featureLocation`	Indicates which column name of rowData to query gene.
`featureDisplay`	Indicates which column name of rowData to use to display feature for visualization.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`plotOrder`	Character vector. If set, reorders the violin plots in the order of the character vector when ‘groupBy‘ is set. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default 10.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default 10.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.

`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`hcutoff`	Adds a horizontal line with the y-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`hcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the horizontal cutoff line, if drawn. Default ’black’.
`hsize`	Size of horizontal line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`hlinetype`	Type of horizontal line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`vcutoff`	Adds a vertical line with the x-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`vcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the vertical cutoff line, if drawn. Default ’black’.
`vsize`	Size of vertical line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`vlinetype`	Type of vertical line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the violin plot of assay data.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEViolinAssayData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  feature = "Apoe", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

`plotSCEViolinColData` *Violin plot of colData.*

Description

Visualizes values stored in the colData slot of a SingleCellExperiment object via a violin plot.

Usage

```
plotSCEViolinColData(
  inSCE,
  coldata,
  sample = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = TRUE,
  dots = TRUE,
  plotOrder = NULL,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  baseSize = 12,
  axisSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  gridLine = FALSE,
  summary = NULL,
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  title = NULL,
  titleSize = NULL,
  hcutoff = NULL,
  hcolor = "red",
  hsize = 1,
  hlinetype = 1,
  vcutoff = NULL,
  vcolor = "red",
  vsize = 1,
  vlinetype = 1,
  combinePlot = "none",
  plotLabels = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.

`coldata`	colData value that will be plotted.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`plotOrder`	Character vector. If set, reorders the violin plots in the order of the character vector when ‘groupBy‘ is set. Default NULL.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`gridLine`	Adds a horizontal grid line if TRUE. Will still be drawn even if defaultTheme is TRUE. Default FALSE.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`title`	Title of plot. Default NULL.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default 15.
`hcutoff`	Adds a horizontal line with the y-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`hcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the horizontal cutoff line, if drawn. Default 'black'.
`hsize`	Size of horizontal line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`hlinetype`	Type of horizontal line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.
`vcutoff`	Adds a vertical line with the x-intercept at given value. Default NULL.
`vcolor`	Character. A color available from ‘colors()‘. Controls the color of the vertical cutoff line, if drawn. Default 'black'.
`vsize`	Size of vertical line, if drawn. Default 0.5.
`vlinetype`	Type of vertical line, if drawn. can be specified with either an integer or a name (0 = blank, 1 = solid, 2 = dashed, 3 = dotted, 4 = dotdash, 5 = longdash, 6 = twodash). Default 1.

`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "none".
`plotLabels`	labels to each plot. If set to "default", will use the name of the samples as the labels. If set to "none", no label will be plotted.

Value

a ggplot of the violin plot of coldata.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotSCEViolinColData(
  inSCE = mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
  coldata = "age", groupBy = "sex"
)
```

`plotScrubletResults` *Plots for runScrublet outputs.*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runScrublet function stored in the colData slot of the SingleCellExperiment object via various plots.

Usage

```
plotScrubletResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  shape = NULL,
  groupBy = NULL,
  combinePlot = "all",
  violin = TRUE,
  boxplot = FALSE,
  dots = TRUE,
  reducedDimName,
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  bin = NULL,
  binLabel = NULL,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  summary = "median",
  summaryTextSize = 3,
  transparency = 1,
  baseSize = 15,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL,
  relHeights = 1,
  relWidths = c(1, 1, 1),
  plotNCols = NULL,
  plotNRows = NULL,
  labelSamples = TRUE,
  samplePerColumn = TRUE,
  sampleRelHeights = 1,
  sampleRelWidths = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results from runScrublet. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL.
`shape`	If provided, add shapes based on the value.
`groupBy`	Groupings for each numeric value. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in the SingleCellExperiment object, or can be retrieved from the colData slot. Default NULL.
`combinePlot`	Must be either "all", "sample", or "none". "all" will combine all plots into a single .ggplot object, while "sample" will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default "all".
`violin`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot the violin plot. Default TRUE.
`boxplot`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot boxplots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`dots`	Boolean. If TRUE, will plot dots for each violin plot. Default TRUE.
`reducedDimName`	Saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default NULL.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default NULL.
`dim1`	1st dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`dim2`	2nd dimension to be used for plotting. Can either be a string which specifies the name of the dimension to be plotted from reducedDims, or a numeric value which specifies the index of the dimension to be plotted. Default is NULL.
`bin`	Numeric vector. If single value, will divide the numeric values into the ‘bin‘ groups. If more than one value, will bin numeric values using values as a cut point.

`binLabel`	Character vector. Labels for the bins created by the 'bin' parameter. Default NULL.
`defaultTheme`	Removes grid in plot and sets axis title size to 10 when TRUE. Default TRUE.
`dotSize`	Size of dots. Default 0.5.
`summary`	Adds a summary statistic, as well as a crossbar to the violin plot. Options are "mean" or "median". Default NULL.
`summaryTextSize`	The text size of the summary statistic displayed above the violin plot. Default 3.
`transparency`	Transparency of the dots, values will be 0-1. Default 1.
`baseSize`	The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize.
`titleSize`	Size of title of plot. Default NULL.
`axisLabelSize`	Size of x/y-axis labels. Default NULL.
`axisSize`	Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default NULL.
`legendSize`	size of legend. Default NULL.
`legendTitleSize`	size of legend title. Default NULL.
`relHeights`	Relative heights of plots when combine is set.
`relWidths`	Relative widths of plots when combine is set.
`plotNCols`	Number of columns when plots are combined in a grid.
`plotNRows`	Number of rows when plots are combined in a grid.
`labelSamples`	Will label sample name in title of plot if TRUE. Default TRUE.
`samplePerColumn`	If TRUE, when there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the output .ggplot will have plots from each sample on a single column. Default TRUE.
`sampleRelHeights`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative heights for each plot.
`sampleRelWidths`	If there are multiple samples and combining by "all", the relative widths for each plot.

Value

list of .ggplot objects

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE=sce, useAssay="counts", reducedDimName="UMAP")
sce <- runScrublet(sce)
plotScrubletResults(inSCE=sce, reducedDimName="UMAP")

## End(Not run)
```

plotSeuratElbow — *plotSeuratElbow Computes the plot object for elbow plot from the pca slot in the input sce object*

Description

plotSeuratElbow Computes the plot object for elbow plot from the pca slot in the input sce object

Usage

```
plotSeuratElbow(
  inSCE,
  significantPC = NULL,
  reduction = "pca",
  ndims = 20,
  externalReduction = NULL,
  interactive = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object from which to compute the elbow plot (pca should be computed)
`significantPC`	Number of significant principal components to plot. This is used to alter the color of the points for the corresponding PCs. If `NULL`, all points will be the same color. Default `NULL`.
`reduction`	Reduction to use for elbow plot generation. Either `"pca"` or `"ica"`. Default `"pca"`.
`ndims`	Number of components to use. Default `20`.
`externalReduction`	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default `NULL`.
`interactive`	Logical value indicating if the returned object should be an interactive plotly object if `TRUE` or a ggplot object if set to `FALSE`. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
```

```
plotSeuratElbow(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`plotSeuratGenes` *Compute and plot visualizations for marker genes*

Description

Compute and plot visualizations for marker genes

Usage

```
plotSeuratGenes(
  inSCE,
  scaledAssayName = "seuratScaledData",
  plotType,
  features,
  groupVariable,
  splitBy = NULL,
  cols = c("lightgrey", "blue"),
  ncol = 1,
  combine = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`scaledAssayName`	Specify the name of the scaled assay stored in the input object.
`plotType`	Specify the type of the plot to compute. Options are limited to "ridge", "violin", "feature", "dot" and "heatmap".
`features`	Specify the features to compute the plot against.
`groupVariable`	Specify the column name from the colData slot that should be used as grouping variable.
`splitBy`	Specify the column name from the colData slot that should be used to split samples. Default is `NULL`.
`cols`	Specify two colors to form a gradient between. Default is `c("lightgrey", "blue")`.
`ncol`	Visualizations will be adjusted in "ncol" number of columns. Default is `1`.
`combine`	A logical value that indicates if the plots should be combined together into a single plot if `TRUE`, else if `FALSE` returns separate ggplot objects for each feature. Only works when `plotType` parameter is `"feature"`, `"violin"` or `"ridge"`. For `"heatmap"` and `"dot"`, plots for all features are always combined into a single plot. Default `FALSE`.

Value

Plot object

`plotSeuratHeatmap` *plotSeuratHeatmap Modifies the heatmap plot object so it contains specified number of heatmaps in a single plot*

Description

plotSeuratHeatmap Modifies the heatmap plot object so it contains specified number of heatmaps in a single plot

Usage

```
plotSeuratHeatmap(plotObject, dims, ncol, labels)
```

Arguments

`plotObject`	plot object computed from runSeuratHeatmap() function
`dims`	numerical value of how many heatmaps to draw (default is 0)
`ncol`	numerical value indicating that in how many columns should the heatmaps be distrbuted (default is 2)
`labels`	list() of labels to draw on heatmaps

Value

modified plot object

`plotSeuratHVG` *plotSeuratHVG Plot highly variable genes from input sce object (must have highly variable genes computations stored)*

Description

plotSeuratHVG Plot highly variable genes from input sce object (must have highly variable genes computations stored)

Usage

```
plotSeuratHVG(inSCE, labelPoints = 0)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object that contains the highly variable genes computations
`labelPoints`	Numeric value indicating the number of top genes that should be labeled. Default is `0`, which will not label any point.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
plotSeuratHVG(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`plotSeuratJackStraw` *plotSeuratJackStraw Computes the plot object for jackstraw plot from the pca slot in the input sce object*

Description

plotSeuratJackStraw Computes the plot object for jackstraw plot from the pca slot in the input sce object

Usage

```
plotSeuratJackStraw(
  inSCE,
  dims = NULL,
  xmax = 0.1,
  ymax = 0.3,
  externalReduction = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object from which to compute the jackstraw plot (pca should be computed)
`dims`	Number of components to plot in Jackstraw. If `NULL`, then all components are plotted Default `NULL`.
`xmax`	X-axis maximum on each QQ plot. Default `0.1`.
`ymax`	Y-axis maximum on each QQ plot. Default `0.3`.
`externalReduction`	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default `NULL`.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratJackStraw(sce, useAssay = "counts")
plotSeuratJackStraw(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`plotSeuratReduction` *plotSeuratReduction Plots the selected dimensionality reduction method*

Description

plotSeuratReduction Plots the selected dimensionality reduction method

Usage

```
plotSeuratReduction(
  inSCE,
  useReduction = c("pca", "ica", "tsne", "umap"),
  showLegend = FALSE,
  groupBy = NULL,
  splitBy = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object which has the selected dimensionality reduction algorithm already computed and stored
`useReduction`	Dimentionality reduction to plot. One of "pca", "ica", "tsne", or "umap". Default `"umap"`.
`showLegend`	Select if legends and labels should be shown on the output plot or not. Either "TRUE" or "FALSE". Default `FALSE`.
`groupBy`	Specify a colData column name that be used for grouping. Default is `NULL`.
`splitBy`	Specify a colData column name that be used for splitting the output plot. Default is `NULL`.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
plotSeuratReduction(sce, useReductionPlot = "pca")
## End(Not run)
```

`plotSoupXResults` *Plot SoupX Result*

Description

This function will generate a combination of plots basing on the correction done by SoupX. For each sample, there will be a UMAP with cluster labeling, followed by a number of UMAPs showing the change in selected top markers. The cluster labeling is what should be used for SoupX to estimate the contamination. The Soup Fraction is calculated by subtracting the gene expression value of the output corrected matrix from that of the original input matrix, and then devided by the input.

Usage

```
plotSoupXResults(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  background = FALSE,
  reducedDimName = NULL,
  plotNCols = 3,
  plotNRows = 2,
  baseSize = 8,
  combinePlot = c("all", "sample", "none"),
  xlab = NULL,
  ylab = NULL,
  dim1 = NULL,
  dim2 = NULL,
  labelClusters = FALSE,
  clusterLabelSize = 3.5,
  defaultTheme = TRUE,
  dotSize = 0.5,
  transparency = 1,
  titleSize = NULL,
  axisLabelSize = NULL,
  axisSize = NULL,
  legendSize = NULL,
  legendTitleSize = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. With `runSoupX` already applied.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default `NULL`.
`background`	Logical. Whether `background` was applied when running `runSoupX`. Default `FALSE`.
`reducedDimName`	Character. The embedding to use for plotting. Leave it `NULL` for using the sample-specific UMAPs generated when running `runSoupX`. Default `NULL`.
`plotNCols`	Integer. Number of columns for the plot grid per sample. Will determine the number of top markers to show together with `plotNRows`. Default `3`.
`plotNRows`	Integer. Number of rows for the plot grid per sample. Will determine the number of top markers to show together with `plotNCols`. Default `2`.
`baseSize`	Numeric. The base font size for all text. Default 12. Can be overwritten by titleSize, axisSize, and axisLabelSize, legendSize, legendTitleSize. Default `8`.
`combinePlot`	Must be either `"all"`, `"sample"`, or `"none"`. `"all"` will combine all plots into a single `.ggplot` object, while `"sample"` will output a list of plots separated by sample. Default `"all"`.
`xlab`	Character vector. Label for x-axis. Default `NULL`.
`ylab`	Character vector. Label for y-axis. Default `NULL`.
`dim1`	See `plotSCEDimReduceColData`. Default `NULL`.
`dim2`	See `plotSCEDimReduceColData`. Default `NULL`.
`labelClusters`	Logical. Whether the cluster labels are plotted. Default `FALSE`.
`clusterLabelSize`	Numeric. Determines the size of cluster label when `labelClusters` is set to `TRUE`. Default `3.5`.
`defaultTheme`	Logical. Adds grid to plot when `TRUE`. Default `TRUE`.
`dotSize`	Numeric. Size of dots. Default `0.5`.
`transparency`	Numeric. Transparency of the dots, values will be from 0 to 1. Default `1`.
`titleSize`	Numeric. Size of title of plot. Default `15`.
`axisLabelSize`	Numeric. Size of x/y-axis labels. Default `NULL`.
`axisSize`	Numeric. Size of x/y-axis ticks. Default `NULL`.
`legendSize`	Numeric. Size of legend. Default `NULL`.
`legendTitleSize`	Numeric. Size of legend title. Default `NULL`.

Value

ggplot object of the combination of UMAPs. See description.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
# SoupX does not work for toy example,
# can be tested with `sce <- importExampleData("pbmc3k")`
sce <- runSoupX(sce, sample = "sample")
plotSoupXResults(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

---

plotTopHVG *Plot highly variable genes*

Description

Plot highly variable genes

Usage

```
plotTopHVG(
  inSCE,
  method = c("vst", "mean.var.plot", "dispersion", "modelGeneVar"),
  hvgList = NULL,
  n = NULL,
  labelsCount = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the computations.
`method`	Select either "vst", "mean.var.plot", "dispersion" or "modelGeneVar".
`hvgList`	Character vector indicating the labels of highly variable genes.
`n`	Specify the number of top genes to highlight in red. If `hvgList` parameter is not provided, this parameter can be used simply to specify the number of top genes to highlight in red.
`labelsCount`	Specify the number of data points/genes to label. By default, all top genes will be labeled.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- scranModelGeneVar(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "logcounts")
plotTopHVG(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, method = "modelGeneVar",
           n = 1000, labelsCount = 0)
```

---

plotTSCANDEgenes *Run plotTSCANDEgenes function to plot cells colored by the expression of a gene of interest*

Description

A wrapper function which plots all the cells in the cluster containing the branch point of the MST in the dataset. Each point is a cell colored by the expression of a gene of interest and the relevant edges of the MST are overlaid on top.

Usage

```
plotTSCANDEgenes(inSCE, geneSymbol, useClusters = NULL, useReducedDim)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`geneSymbol`	Choose the gene of interest from the DE genes in order to know the level of expression of gene in clusters.
`useClusters`	Choose the cluster containing the branch point in the data in order to recompute the pseudotimes so that the root lies at the cluster center, allowing us to detect genes that are associated with the divergence of the branches.
`useReducedDim`	Saved dimension reduction name in `inSCE`. Required.

Value

A plots with the cells colored by the expression of a gene of interest.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
```

```
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
sce <- runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis(inSCE = sce, useClusters = 5)
plotTSCANDEgenes(inSCE = sce, geneSymbol = "CD74", useReducedDim = "TSNE")
```

---

plotTSCANPseudotimeGenes

Run plotTSCANPseudotimeGenes function to plot genes with significant changes

---

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runTSCANDEG function. Plots the genes that increase or decrease in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST.

Usage

```
plotTSCANPseudotimeGenes(
  inSCE,
  pathIndex,
  direction = c("increasing", "decreasing"),
  n = 10
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
pathIndex	Path number for which the pseudotime values should be used. PathIndex corresponds to one path from the root node to one of the terminal nodes.
direction	Which direction to use. Choices are increasing or decreasing.
n	An integer. Only to plot this number of top genes that are increasing/decreasing in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST. Default 10.

Value

A plot with the top genes that increase/decrease in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
plotTSCANPseudotimeGenes(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4,
                         direction = "increasing")
```

---

plotTSCANPseudotimeHeatmap

Run plotTSCANPseudotimeHeatmap function to plot heatmap for top genes

---

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the `runTSCANDEG` function. Plots the top genes that increase in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST

Usage

```
plotTSCANPseudotimeHeatmap(inSCE, pathIndex, topN = 50)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`pathIndex`	Path number for which the pseudotime values should be used. PathIndex corresponds to one path from the root node to one of the terminal nodes.
`topN`	An integer. Only to plot this number of top genes along the path in the MST, in terms of log2FC value. Use `NULL` to cancel the top N subscription. Default `50`.

Value

A plot with the top genes that increase in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
plotTSCANPseudotimeHeatmap(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4,topN = 5)
```

`plotTSCANResults` *Plot MST pseudotime values for cells*

Description

A wrapper function which visualizes outputs from the runTSCAN function. Plots the pseudotime ordering of the cells by projecting them onto the MST

Usage

```
plotTSCANResults(inSCE, useReducedDim)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useReducedDim`	Saved dimension reduction name in `inSCE` object. Required.

Value

A plot with the pseudotime ordering of the cells by projecting them onto the MST.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                  reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
plotTSCANResults(inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "TSNE")
```

`plotTSNE` *Plot t-SNE plot on dimensionality reduction data run from t-SNE method.*

Description

Plot t-SNE plot on dimensionality reduction data run from t-SNE method.

Usage

```
plotTSNE(
  inSCE,
  colorBy = "No Color",
  shape = "No Shape",
  reducedDimName = "TSNE",
  runTSNE = FALSE,
  useAssay = "logcounts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`colorBy`	color by condition.
`shape`	add shape to each distinct label.
`reducedDimName`	a name to store the results of the dimension reduction coordinates obtained from this method. This is stored in the SingleCellExperiment object in the reducedDims slot. Required.
`runTSNE`	Run t-SNE if the reducedDimName does not exist. the Default is FALSE.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. The default is "logcounts".

Value

A t-SNE plot

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
plotTSNE(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, colorBy = "level1class",
        reducedDimName = "TSNE_counts")
```

`plotUMAP` *Plot UMAP results either on already run results or run first and then plot.*

Description

Plot UMAP results either on already run results or run first and then plot.

Usage

```
plotUMAP(
  inSCE,
  colorBy = "No Color",
  shape = "No Shape",
  reducedDimName = "UMAP",
  runUMAP = FALSE,
  useAssay = "logcounts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components. Required
`colorBy`	color by a condition(any column of the annotation data).
`shape`	add shapes to each condition.
`reducedDimName`	saved dimension reduction name in the SingleCellExperiment object. Required.
`runUMAP`	If the dimension reduction components are already available set this to FALSE, otherwise set to TRUE. Default is False.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. The default is "logcounts"

Value

a UMAP plot of the reduced dimensions.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- getUMAP(inSCE = sce, useAssay = "counts", reducedDimName = "UMAP")
plotUMAP(sce, shape = "No Shape", reducedDimName = "UMAP",
        runUMAP = TRUE, useAssay = "counts")
```

qcInputProcess *Create SingleCellExperiment object from command line input arguments*

Description

Create SingleCellExperiment object from command line input arguments

Usage

```
qcInputProcess(
  preproc,
  samplename,
  path,
  raw,
  fil,
  ref,
  rawFile,
  filFile,
  dataType
)
```

Arguments

preproc	Method used to preprocess the data. It's one of the path provided in –preproc argument.
samplename	The sample name of the data. It's one of the path provided in –sample argument.
path	Base path of the dataset. It's one of the path provided in –bash_path argument.
raw	The directory contains droplet matrix, gene and cell barcodes information. It's one of the path provided in –raw_data_path argument.
fil	The directory contains cell matrix, gene and cell barcodes information. It's one of the path provided in –cell_data_path argument.
ref	The name of reference used by cellranger. Only need for CellrangerV2 data.
rawFile	The full path of the RDS file or Matrix file of the raw gene count matrix. It's one of the path provided in –raw_data argument.
filFile	The full path of the RDS file or Matrix file of the cell count matrix. It's one of the path provided in –cell_data argument.
dataType	Type of the input. It can be "Both", "Droplet" or "Cell". It's one of the path provided in –genome argument.

Value

A list of SingleCellExperiment object containing the droplet or cell data or both,depending on the dataType that users provided.

readSingleCellMatrix *Read single cell expression matrix*

Description

Automatically detact the format of the input file and read the file.

Usage

```
readSingleCellMatrix(
  file,
  class = c("Matrix", "matrix"),
  delayedArray = TRUE,
  colIndexLocation = NULL,
  rowIndexLocation = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`file`	Path to input file. Supported file endings include .mtx, .txt, .csv, .tab, .tsv, .npz, and their corresponding `gzip`, `bzip2`, or `xz` compressed extensions (`*.gz`, `*.bz2`, or `*.xz`).
`class`	Character. Class of matrix. One of "Matrix" or "matrix". Specifying "Matrix" will convert to a sparse format which should be used for datasets with large numbers of cells. Default "Matrix".
`delayedArray`	Boolean. Whether to read the expression matrix as DelayedArray object or not. Default `TRUE`.
`colIndexLocation`	Character. For Optimus output, the path to the barcode index .npy file. Used only if `file` has .npz extension. Default `NULL`.
`rowIndexLocation`	Character. For Optimus output, The path to the feature (gene) index .npy file. Used only if `file` has .npz extension. Default `NULL`.

Value

A DelayedArray object or matrix.

Examples

```
mat <- readSingleCellMatrix(system.file("extdata/hgmm_1k_v3_20x20/outs/",
    "filtered_feature_bc_matrix/matrix.mtx.gz", package = "singleCellTK"))
```

reportCellQC *Get runCellQC .html report*

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the runCellQC function output

Usage

```
reportCellQC(
  inSCE,
  output_file = NULL,
  output_dir = NULL,
  subTitle = NULL,
  studyDesign = NULL,
  useReducedDim = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object containing the filtered count matrix with the output from runCellQC function
`output_file`	Character. The name of the generated file. If NULL/default then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template.
`output_dir`	Character. The name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If NULL/default the file is stored to the current working directory
`subTitle`	subtitle of the QC HTML report. Default is NULL.
`studyDesign`	Character. The description of the data set and experiment design. It would be shown at the top of QC HTML report. Default is NULL.
`useReducedDim`	Character. The name of the saved dimension reduction slot including cells from all samples in thenSingleCellExperiment object, Default is NULL

Value

.html file

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
sce <- runCellQC(sce)
reportCellQC(inSCE = sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`reportClusterAbundance`
Get plotClusterAbundance .html report

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the plotCluster-Abundance function output

Usage

```
reportClusterAbundance(
  inSCE,
  cluster,
  variable,
  output_dir = ".",
  output_file = "plotClusterAbundance_Report",
  pdf = FALSE,
  showSession = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`cluster`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the cluster label in `colData`.
`variable`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the phenotype labels in `colData`.
`output_dir`	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`output_file`	name of the generated file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`pdf`	A `logical` value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`showSession`	A `logical` value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

An HTML file of the report will be generated at the path specified in the arguments.

reportDiffAbundanceFET

Get diffAbundanceFET .html report

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the diffAbundanceFET function output

Usage

```
reportDiffAbundanceFET(
  inSCE,
  cluster,
  variable,
  control,
  case,
  analysisName,
  output_dir = ".",
  output_file = "DifferentialAbundanceFET_Report",
  pdf = FALSE,
  showSession = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object.
cluster	A single character, specifying the name to store the cluster label in colData.
variable	A single character, specifying the name to store the phenotype labels in colData.
control	character. Specifying one or more categories that can be found in the vector specified by variable.
case	character. Specifying one or more categories that can be found in the vector specified by variable.
analysisName	A single character. Will be used for naming the result table, which will be saved in metadata slot.
output_dir	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If NULL the file is stored to the current working directory. Default NULL.
output_file	name of the generated file. If NULL then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default NULL.
pdf	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is TRUE.
showSession	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is TRUE.

Value

An HTML file of the report will be generated at the path specified in the arguments.

`reportDiffExp` *Get runDEAnalysis .html report*

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the `runDEAnalysis` function output

Usage

```
reportDiffExp(inSCE, study, output_file = NULL, output_dir = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the output from `runDEAnalysis` function
`study`	The specific analysis to visualize, used as `analysisName` argument when running differential expression.
`output_file`	name of the generated file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`output_dir`	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.

Value

Saves the HTML report in the specified output directory.

`reportDropletQC` *Get runDropletQC .html report*

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the runDropletQC function output

Usage

```
reportDropletQC(
  inSCE,
  output_file = NULL,
  output_dir = NULL,
  subTitle = NULL,
  studyDesign = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object containing the full droplet count matrix with the output from runDropletQC function
`output_file`	name of the generated file. If NULL/default then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template
`output_dir`	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If NULL/default the file is stored to the current working directory
`subTitle`	subtitle of the QC HTML report. Default is NULL.
`studyDesign`	description of the data set and experiment design. It would be shown at the top of QC HTML report. Default is NULL.

Value

.html file

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runDropletQC(sce)
reportDropletQC(inSCE = sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`reportFindMarker` *Get findMarkerDiffExp .html report*

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report containing the visualizations of the `findMarkerDiffExp` function output

Usage

```
reportFindMarker(inSCE, output_file = NULL, output_dir = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object containing the output from `findMarkerDiffExp` function
`output_file`	name of the generated file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`output_dir`	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.

Value

An HTML file of the report will be generated at the path specified in the arguments.

`reportQCTool` *Get .html report of the output of the selected QC algorithm*

Description

A function to generate .html Rmarkdown report for the specified QC algorithm output

Usage

```
reportQCTool(
  inSCE,
  algorithm = c("BarcodeRankDrops", "EmptyDrops", "QCMetrics", "Scrublet",
   "ScDblFinder", "Cxds", "Bcds", "CxdsBcdsHybrid", "DoubletFinder", "DecontX", "SoupX"),
  output_file = NULL,
  output_dir = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object containing the count matrix (full droplets or filtered matrix, depends on the selected QC algorithm) with the output from at least one of these functions: runQCMetrics, runScrublet, runScDblFinder, runCxds, runBcds, runCxdsBcdsHybrid, runDecontX, runBarcodeRankDrops, runEmptyDrops
`algorithm`	Character. Specifies which QC algorithm report to generate. Available options are "BarcodeRankDrops", "EmptyDrops", "QCMetrics", "Scrublet", "ScDblFinder", "Cxds", "Bcds", "CxdsBcdsHybrid", "DoubletFinder", "DecontX" and "SoupX".
`output_file`	name of the generated file. If NULL/default then the output file name will be based on the name of the selected QC algorithm name .
`output_dir`	name of the output directory to save the rendered file. If NULL/default the file is stored to the current working directory

Value

.html file

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
sce <- runDecontX(sce)
sce <- getUMAP(sce)
reportQCTool(inSCE = sce, algorithm = "DecontX")

## End(Not run)
```

`reportSeurat`	*Generates an HTML report for the complete Seurat workflow and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.*

Description

Generates an HTML report for the complete Seurat workflow and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeurat(
  inSCE,
  biological.group = NULL,
  phenotype.groups = NULL,
  selected.markers = NULL,
  clustering.resolution = 0.8,
  variable.features = 2000,
  pc.count = 50,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  runHVG = TRUE,
  plotHVG = TRUE,
  runDimRed = TRUE,
  plotJackStraw = FALSE,
  plotElbowPlot = TRUE,
  plotHeatmaps = TRUE,
  runClustering = TRUE,
  plotTSNE = TRUE,
  plotUMAP = TRUE,
  minResolution = 0.3,
  maxResolution = 1.5,
  runMSClusters = TRUE,
  runMSBioGroup = TRUE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.

`biological.group`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as the main biological group in the Seurat report for marker selection and grouping.
`phenotype.groups`	A character vector that specifies the names of the `colData()` columns to use for differential expression in addition to the `biological.group` parameter.
`selected.markers`	A character vector containing the user-specified gene symbols or feature names of marker genes that be used to generate gene plots in addition to the gene markers computed from differential expression.
`clustering.resolution`	A numeric value indicating the user-specified final resolution to use with clustering. Default is `0.8`.
`variable.features`	A numeric value indicating the number of top variable features to identify. Default `2000`.
`pc.count`	A numeric value indicating the number of principal components to use in the analysis workflow. Default is `50`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`runHVG`	A logical value indicating if the feature selection computation should be run or not. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotHVG`	A logical value indicating if the plot for the top most variable genes should be visualized in a mean-to-variance plot. Default is `TRUE`.
`runDimRed`	A logical value indicating if PCA should be computed. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotJackStraw`	A logical value indicating if JackStraw plot be visualized for the principal components. Default is `FALSE`.
`plotElbowPlot`	A logical value indicating if the ElbowPlot be visualized for the principal components. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotHeatmaps`	A logical value indicating if heatmaps should be plotted for the principal components. Default is `TRUE`.
`runClustering`	A logical value indicating if clustering section should be run in the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotTSNE`	A logical value indicating if TSNE plots should be visualized for clustering results. Default is `TRUE`.

plotUMAP	A logical value indicating if the UMAP plots should be visualized for the clustering results. Default is TRUE.
minResolution	A numeric value indicating the minimum resolution to use for clustering. Default is 0.3.
maxResolution	A numeric value indicating the maximum resolution to use for clustering. Default is 1.5.
runMSClusters	A logical value indicating if marker selection should be run between clusters. Default is TRUE.
runMSBioGroup	A logical value indicating if marker selection should be run between the biological.group parameter. Default is TRUE.
forceRun	A logical value indicating if all algorithms should be re-run regardless if they have been computed previously in the input object. Default is FALSE.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with computations stored.

---

reportSeuratClustering

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Clustering and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Clustering and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratClustering(
  inSCE,
  biological.group = NULL,
  phenotype.groups = NULL,
  runClustering = TRUE,
  plotTSNE = TRUE,
  plotUMAP = TRUE,
  minResolution = 0.3,
  maxResolution = 1.5,
  numClusters = 10,
  significant_PC = 10,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`biological.group`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as the main biological group in the Seurat report for marker selection and grouping.
`phenotype.groups`	A character vector that specifies the names of the `colData()` columns to use for differential expression in addition to the `biological.group` parameter.
`runClustering`	A logical value indicating if Clustering should be run or not in the report. Default is `TRUE`. If `FALSE`, parameters `plotTSNE` and `plotUMAP` are also set to `FALSE`.
`plotTSNE`	A logical value indicating if TSNE plots should be visualized in the clustering section of the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotUMAP`	A logical value indicating if UMAP plots should be visualized in the clustering section of the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`minResolution`	A numeric value indicating the minimum resolution to use for clustering. Default `0.3`.
`maxResolution`	A numeric value indicating the maximum resolution to use for clustering. Default `1.5`.
`numClusters`	temp (to remove)
`significant_PC`	temp (change to pc.use)
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

reportSeuratDimRed	*Generates an HTML report for Seurat Dimensionality Reduction and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.*

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Dimensionality Reduction and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratDimRed(
  inSCE,
  pc.count = 50,
  runDimRed = TRUE,
  plotJackStraw = FALSE,
  plotElbowPlot = TRUE,
  plotHeatmaps = TRUE,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`pc.count`	A numeric value indicating the number of principal components to compute. Default is `50`.
`runDimRed`	A logical value indicating if dimenionality reduction should be computed. Default `TRUE`.
`plotJackStraw`	A logical value indicating if JackStraw plot should be visualized. Default `FALSE`.
`plotElbowPlot`	A logical value indicating if ElbowPlot should be visualized. Default `TRUE`.
`plotHeatmaps`	A logical value indicating if heatmaps should be visualized. Default `TRUE`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.

`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

`reportSeuratFeatureSelection`

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Feature Selection and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Feature Selection and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratFeatureSelection(
  inSCE,
  variable.features = 2000,
  runHVG = TRUE,
  plotHVG = TRUE,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`variable.features`	A numeric value indicating the number of top variable features to identify. Default `2000`.
`runHVG`	A logical value indicating if the feature selection algorithm should be run or not. Default `TRUE`.

`plotHVG`	A logical value indicating if the mean-to-variance plot of the top variable feature should be visualized or not. Default `TRUE`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

---

reportSeuratMarkerSelection

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Results (including Clustering & Marker Selection) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Results (including Clustering & Marker Selection) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratMarkerSelection(
  inSCE,
  biological.group = NULL,
  phenotype.groups = NULL,
  selected.markers = NULL,
  runMarkerSelection = TRUE,
  plotMarkerSelection = TRUE,
  countFeatures = 10,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`biological.group`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as the main biological group in the Seurat report for marker selection and grouping.
`phenotype.groups`	A character vector that specifies the names of the `colData()` columns to use for differential expression in addition to the `biological.group` parameter.
`selected.markers`	A character vector containing the user-specified gene symbols or feature names of marker genes that be used to generate gene plots in addition to the gene markers computed from differential expression.
`runMarkerSelection`	A logical value indicating if the marker selection computation should be run or not. Default `TRUE`.
`plotMarkerSelection`	A logical value indicating if the gene marker plots should be visualized or not. Default `TRUE`.
`countFeatures`	A numeric value indicating the number of top features to visualize in each group. Default `10`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

reportSeuratNormalization

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Normalization and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Normalization and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratNormalization(
  inSCE,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object previously passed through `reportSeuratRun()`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

reportSeuratResults

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Results (including Clustering & Marker Selection) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Results (including Clustering & Marker Selection) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratResults(
  inSCE,
  biological.group = NULL,
  phenotype.groups = NULL,
  selected.markers = NULL,
  clustering.resolution = 0.8,
  pc.count = 50,
  plotTSNE = TRUE,
  plotUMAP = TRUE,
  runClustering = TRUE,
  runMSClusters = TRUE,
  runMSBioGroup = TRUE,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object previously passed through `reportSeuratRun()`.
`biological.group`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as the main biological group in the Seurat report for marker selection and grouping.
`phenotype.groups`	A character vector that specifies the names of the `colData()` columns to use for differential expression in addition to the `biological.group` parameter.
`selected.markers`	A character vector containing the user-specified gene symbols or feature names of marker genes that be used to generate gene plots in addition to the gene markers computed from differential expression.

`clustering.resolution`	A numeric value indicating the user-specified final resolution to use with clustering. Default is `0.8`.
`pc.count`	A numeric value indicating the number of principal components to use in the analysis workflow. Default is `50`.
`plotTSNE`	A logical value indicating if TSNE plots should be visualized in the clustering section of the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotUMAP`	A logical value indicating if UMAP plots should be visualized in the clustering section of the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`runClustering`	A logical value indicating if Clustering should be run or not in the report. Default is `TRUE`. If `FALSE`, parameters `plotTSNE` and `plotUMAP` are also set to `FALSE`.
`runMSClusters`	A logical value indicating if the marker selection section for identifying marker genes between clusters should be run and visualized in the report. Default `TRUE`.
`runMSBioGroup`	A logical value indicating if the marker selection section for identifying marker genes between the `biological.group` parameter should be run and visualized in the report. Default `TRUE`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

`reportSeuratRun` *Generates an HTML report for Seurat Run (including Normalization, Feature Selection, Dimensionality Reduction & Clustering) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.*

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Run (including Normalization, Feature Selection, Dimensionality Reduction & Clustering) and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratRun(
  inSCE,
  biological.group = NULL,
  phenotype.groups = NULL,
  variable.features = 2000,
  pc.count = 50,
  runHVG = TRUE,
  plotHVG = TRUE,
  runDimRed = TRUE,
  plotJackStraw = FALSE,
  plotElbowPlot = TRUE,
  plotHeatmaps = TRUE,
  runClustering = TRUE,
  plotTSNE = TRUE,
  plotUMAP = TRUE,
  minResolution = 0.3,
  maxResolution = 1.5,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`biological.group`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as the main biological group in the Seurat report for tSNE & UMAP visualization.
`phenotype.groups`	A character value that specifies the name of the `colData()` column to use as additional phenotype variables in the Seurat report for tSNE & UMAP visualization.
`variable.features`	A numeric value indicating the number of top variable genes to identify in the report. Default is `2000`.
`pc.count`	A numeric value indicating the number of principal components to use in the analysis workflow. Default is `50`.

`runHVG`	A logical value indicating if feature selection should be run in the report. Default `TRUE`.
`plotHVG`	A logical value indicating if the top variable genes should be visualized through a mean-to-variance plot. Default is `TRUE`.
`runDimRed`	A logical value indicating if PCA should be computed in the report. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotJackStraw`	A logical value indicating if the JackStraw plot should be visualized for the principal components. Default is `FALSE`.
`plotElbowPlot`	A logical value indicating if the ElbowPlot should be visualized for the principal components. Default is `FALSE`.
`plotHeatmaps`	A logical value indicating if the Heatmaps should be visualized for the principal components. Default is `FALSE`.
`runClustering`	A logical value indicating if Clustering should be run over multiple resolutions as defined by the `minResolution` and `maxResolution` parameters. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotTSNE`	A logical value indicating if TSNE plot should be visualized for clusters. Default is `TRUE`.
`plotUMAP`	A logical value indicating if UMAP plot should be visualized for clusters. Default is `TRUE`.
`minResolution`	A numeric value indicating the minimum resolution to use for clustering. Default `0.3`.
`maxResolution`	A numeric value indicating the maximum resolution to use for clustering. Default `1.5`.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

`reportSeuratScaling` *Generates an HTML report for Seurat Scaling and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.*

Description

Generates an HTML report for Seurat Scaling and returns the SCE object with the results computed and stored inside the object.

Usage

```
reportSeuratScaling(
  inSCE,
  outputFile = NULL,
  outputDir = NULL,
  subtitle = NULL,
  authors = NULL,
  showSession = FALSE,
  pdf = FALSE,
  forceRun = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`outputFile`	Specify the name of the generated output HTML file. If `NULL` then the output file name will be based on the name of the Rmarkdown template. Default `NULL`.
`outputDir`	Specify the name of the output directory to save the rendered HTML file. If `NULL` the file is stored to the current working directory. Default `NULL`.
`subtitle`	A character value specifying the subtitle to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`authors`	A character value specifying the names of the authors to use in the report. Default `NULL`.
`showSession`	A logical value indicating if session information should be displayed or not. Default is `FALSE`.
`pdf`	A logical value indicating if a pdf should also be generated for each figure in the report. Default is `FALSE`.
`forceRun`	A logical value indicating if all computations previously computed should be re-calculated regardless if these computations are available in the input object. Default is `FALSE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object with computations stored.

retrieveSCEIndex *Retrieve cell/feature index by giving identifiers saved in col/rowData*

Description

Originally written in retrieveFeatureIndex. Modified for also retrieving cell indices and only working for SingleCellExperiment object. This will return indices of features among the rowData/colData. Partial matching (i.e. grepping) can be used.

Usage

```
retrieveSCEIndex(
  inSCE,
  IDs,
  axis,
  by = NULL,
  exactMatch = TRUE,
  firstMatch = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object. Required
IDs	Character vector of identifiers for features or cells to find in rowData or colData of inSCE
axis	A character scalar to specify whether to search for features or cells. Use "row", "feature" or "gene" for features; "col" or "cell" for cells.
by	Character. In which column to search for features/cells in rowData/colData. Default NULL for search the rownames/colnames
exactMatch	A logical scalar. Whether to only identify exact matches or to identify partial matches using grep. Default TRUE
firstMatch	A logical scalar. Whether to only identify the first matches or to return all plausible matches. Default TRUE

Value

A unique, non-NA numeric vector of indices for the matching features/cells in inSCE.

Author(s)

Yusuke Koga, Joshua Campbell

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
retrieveSCEIndex(inSCE = sce, IDs = "ENSG00000205542",
 axis = "row")
```

`runBarcodeRankDrops` *Identify empty droplets using barcodeRanks.*

Description

Run barcodeRanks on a count matrix provided in a SingleCellExperiment object. Distinguish between droplets containing cells and ambient RNA in a droplet-based single-cell RNA sequencing experiment.

Usage

```
runBarcodeRankDrops(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  lower = 100,
  fitBounds = NULL,
  df = 20
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. Must contain a raw counts matrix before empty droplets have been removed.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to emptyDrops will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default `NULL`.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.
`lower`	See emptyDrops for more information. Default `100`.
`fitBounds`	See emptyDrops for more information. Default `NULL`.
`df`	See emptyDrops for more information. Default `20`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with the barcodeRanks output table appended to the colData slot. The columns include *dropletUtils_BarcodeRank_Knee* and *dropletUtils_BarcodeRank_Knee* Please refer to the documentation of barcodeRanks for details.

Examples

```
# The following unfiltered PBMC_1k_v3 data were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/3.0.0
# /pbmc_1k_v3
# Only the top 10 cells with most counts and the last 10 cells with non-zero
# counts are included in this example.
# This example only serves as an proof of concept and a tutoriol on how to
# run the function. The results should not be
# used for drawing scientific conclusions.
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- runBarcodeRankDrops(inSCE = sce)
```

runBBKNN   *Apply BBKNN batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

BBKNN, an extremely fast graph-based data integration algorithm. It modifies the neighbourhood construction step to produce a graph that is balanced across all batches of the data.

Usage

```
runBBKNN(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  batch = "batch",
  reducedDimName = "BBKNN",
  nComponents = 50L
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"logcounts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`reducedDimName`	A single character. The name for the corrected low-dimensional representation. Will be saved to `reducedDim(inSCE)`. Default `"BBKNN"`.
`nComponents`	An integer. Number of principle components or the dimensionality, adopted in the pre-PCA-computation step, the BBKNN step (for how many PCs the algorithm takes into account), and the final UMAP combination step where the value represent the dimensionality of the updated reducedDim. Default `50L`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)` updated.

References

Krzysztof Polanski et al., 2020

Examples

```
## Not run:
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sceBatches.small <- sample(sceBatches, 20)
sceCorr <- runBBKNN(sceBatches.small, useAssay = "logcounts",
                    nComponents = 10)

## End(Not run)
```

`runBcds` *Find doublets/multiplets using bcds.*

Description

A wrapper function for bcds. Annotate doublets/multiplets using a binary classification approach to discriminate artificial doublets from original data. Generate a doublet score for each cell. Infer doublets if `estNdbl` is `TRUE`.

Usage

```
runBcds(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  seed = 12345,
  ntop = 500,
  srat = 1,
  verb = FALSE,
  retRes = FALSE,
  nmax = "tune",
  varImp = FALSE,
  estNdbl = FALSE,
  useAssay = "counts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. Needs `counts` in assays slot.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. bcds will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default NULL.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
`ntop`	See bcds for more information. Default `500`.
`srat`	See bcds for more information. Default `1`.
`verb`	See bcds for more information. Default `FALSE`.

`retRes`	See bcds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`nmax`	See bcds for more information. Default `"tune"`.
`varImp`	See bcds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`estNdbl`	See bcds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with bcds output appended to the colData slot. The columns include *bcds_score* and optionally *bcds_call*. Please refer to the documentation of bcds for details.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runBcds(sce)
```

`runCellQC` *Perform comprehensive single cell QC*

Description

A wrapper function to run several QC algorithms on a SingleCellExperiment object containing cells after empty droplets have been removed.

Usage

```
runCellQC(
  inSCE,
  algorithms = c("QCMetrics", "scDblFinder", "cxds", "bcds", "cxds_bcds_hybrid",
    "decontX", "decontX_bg", "soupX", "soupX_bg"),
  sample = NULL,
  collectionName = NULL,
  geneSetList = NULL,
  geneSetListLocation = "rownames",
  geneSetCollection = NULL,
  mitoRef = NULL,
  mitoIDType = NULL,
  mitoPrefix = NULL,
  mitoID = NULL,
  mitoGeneLocation = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  background = NULL,
  bgAssayName = NULL,
  bgBatch = NULL,
  seed = 12345,
  paramsList = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	A SingleCellExperiment object.
algorithms	Character vector. Specify which QC algorithms to run. Available options are "QCMetrics", "scrublet", "doubletFinder", "scDblFinder", "cxds", "bcds", "cxds_bcds_hybrid", "decontX" and "soupX".
sample	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Algorithms will be run on cells from each sample separately.
collectionName	Character. Name of a `GeneSetCollection` obtained by using one of the import-GeneSet* functions. Default `NULL`.
geneSetList	See `runPerCellQC`. Default NULL.
geneSetListLocation	See `runPerCellQC`. Default NULL.
geneSetCollection	See `runPerCellQC`. Default NULL.
mitoRef, mitoIDType, mitoPrefix, mitoID, mitoGeneLocation	Arguments used to import mitochondrial genes and quantify their expression. Please see runPerCellQC for detailed information.
useAssay	A string specifying which assay contains the count matrix for cells.
background	A SingleCellExperiment with the matrix located in the assay slot under `bgAssayName`. It should have the same structure as inSCE except it contains the matrix of empty droplets instead of cells. When supplied, empirical distribution of transcripts from these empty droplets will be used as the contamination distribution. It is only used in algorithms "decontX" and "soupX". Default NULL.
bgAssayName	Character. Name of the assay to use if background is a SingleCellExperiment. If NULL, the function will use the same value as `useAssay`. It is only used in algorithms "decontX" and "soupX". Default is NULL.
bgBatch	Batch labels for `background`. If `background` is a SingleCellExperiment object, this can be a single character specifying a name that can be found in `colData(background)` to directly use the barcode annotation Its unique values should be the same as those in `sample`, such that each batch of cells have their corresponding batch of empty droplets as background, pointed by this parameter. It is only used in algorithms "decontX" and "soupX". Default to NULL.
seed	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
paramsList	A list containing parameters for QC functions. Default NULL.

Value

SingleCellExperiment object containing the outputs of the specified algorithms in the colData of `inSCE`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
```

```
sce <- runCellQC(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

---

runComBatSeq *Apply ComBat-Seq batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

The ComBat-Seq batch adjustment approach assumes that batch effects represent non-biological but systematic shifts in the mean or variability of genomic features for all samples within a processing batch. It uses either parametric or non-parametric empirical Bayes frameworks for adjusting data for batch effects.

Usage

```
runComBatSeq(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  batch = "batch",
  covariates = NULL,
  bioCond = NULL,
  useSVA = FALSE,
  assayName = "ComBatSeq",
  shrink = FALSE,
  shrinkDisp = FALSE,
  nGene = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"counts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`covariates`	A character vector indicating the fields in `colData` that annotates other covariates, such as the cell types. Default `NULL`.
`bioCond`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the biological conditions. Default `NULL`.
`useSVA`	A logical scalar. Whether to estimate surrogate variables and use them as an empirical control. Default `FALSE`.
`assayName`	A single characeter. The name for the corrected assay. Will be saved to `assay`. Default `"ComBat"`.

shrink	A logical scalar. Whether to apply shrinkage on parameter estimation. Default FALSE.
shrinkDisp	A logical scalar. Whether to apply shrinkage on dispersion. Default FALSE.
nGene	An integer. Number of random genes to use in empirical Bayes estimation, only useful when shrink is set to TRUE. Default NULL.

Details

For the parameters covariates and useSVA, when the cell type information is known, it is recommended to specify the cell type annotation to the argument covariates; if the cell types are unknown but expected to be balanced, it is recommended to run with default settings, yet informative covariates could still be useful. If the cell types are unknown and are expected to be unbalanced, it is recommended to set useSVA to TRUE.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with assay(inSCE, assayName) updated.

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
sceBatches <- sample(sceBatches, 40)
# Cell type known
sceBatches <- runComBatSeq(sceBatches, "counts", "batch",
                           covariates = "cell_type",
                           assayName = "ComBat_cell_seq")
# Cell type unknown but balanced
#sceBatches <- runComBatSeq(sceBatches, "counts", "batch",
#                            assayName = "ComBat_seq")
# Cell type unknown and unbalanced
#sceBatches <- runComBatSeq(sceBatches, "counts", "batch",
#                            useSVA = TRUE,
#                            assayName = "ComBat_sva_seq")
```

---

runCxds *Find doublets/multiplets using cxds.*

Description

A wrapper function for cxds. Annotate doublets/multiplets using co-expression based approach. Generate a doublet score for each cell. Infer doublets if estNdbl is TRUE.

Usage

```
runCxds(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  seed = 12345,
  ntop = 500,
  binThresh = 0,
  verb = FALSE,
  retRes = FALSE,
  estNdbl = FALSE,
  useAssay = "counts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. Needs `counts` in assays slot.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. cxds will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default NULL.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
`ntop`	See cxds for more information. Default `500`.
`binThresh`	See cxds for more information. Default `0`.
`verb`	See cxds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`retRes`	See cxds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`estNdbl`	See cxds for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with cxds output appended to the colData slot. The columns include *cxds_score* and optionally *cxds_call*. Please refer to the documentation of cxds for details.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runCxds(sce)
```

`runCxdsBcdsHybrid` *Find doublets/multiplets using cxds_bcds_hybrid.*

Description

A wrapper function for cxds_bcds_hybrid. Annotate doublets/multiplets using a binary classification approach to discriminate artificial doublets from original data. Generate a doublet score for each cell. Infer doublets if `estNdbl` is `TRUE`.

Usage

```
runCxdsBcdsHybrid(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  seed = 12345,
  nTop = 500,
  cxdsArgs = list(),
  bcdsArgs = list(),
  verb = FALSE,
  estNdbl = FALSE,
  force = FALSE,
  useAssay = "counts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. Needs `counts` in assays slot.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. cxds_bcds_hybrid will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default NULL.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
`nTop`	The number of top varialbe genes to consider. Used in both `csds` and `bcds`. Default `500`.
`cxdsArgs`	See cxds_bcds_hybrid for more information. Default `NULL`.
`bcdsArgs`	See cxds_bcds_hybrid for more information. Default `NULL`.
`verb`	See cxds_bcds_hybrid for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`estNdbl`	See cxds_bcds_hybrid for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`force`	See cxds_bcds_hybrid for more information. Default `FALSE`.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with cxds_bcds_hybrid output appended to the colData slot. The columns include *hybrid_score* and optionally *hybrid_call*. Please refer to the documentation of cxds_bcds_hybrid for details.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runCxdsBcdsHybrid(sce)
```

runDEAnalysis *Perform differential expression analysis on SCE object*

Description

Perform differential expression analysis on SCE object

Usage

```
runDEAnalysis(method = c("wilcox", "MAST", "DESeq2", "Limma", "ANOVA"), ...)

runDESeq2(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  analysisName,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  covariates = NULL,
  fullReduced = TRUE,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = NULL,
  fdrThreshold = NULL,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)

runLimmaDE(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  analysisName,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  covariates = NULL,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = NULL,
  fdrThreshold = NULL,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)

runANOVA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  analysisName,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  covariates = NULL,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = NULL,
  fdrThreshold = NULL,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)

runMAST(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  analysisName,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  covariates = NULL,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = NULL,
  fdrThreshold = NULL,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE,
  check_sanity = TRUE
)

runWilcox(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  index1 = NULL,
  index2 = NULL,
  class = NULL,
  classGroup1 = NULL,
  classGroup2 = NULL,
  analysisName,
  groupName1,
  groupName2,
  covariates = NULL,
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  log2fcThreshold = NULL,
  fdrThreshold = NULL,
  minGroup1MeanExp = NULL,
  maxGroup2MeanExp = NULL,
  minGroup1ExprPerc = NULL,
  maxGroup2ExprPerc = NULL,
  overwrite = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`method`	Character. Specify which method to use when using `runDEAnalysis()`. Choose from `"wilcox"`, `"MAST"`, `"DESeq2"`, `"Limma"`, `"ANOVA"`. Default `"wilcox"`.
`...`	Arguments to pass to specific methods when using the generic `runDEAnalysis()`.
`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object.
`useAssay`	character. A string specifying which assay to use for the DE regression. Default `"counts"` for DESeq2, `"logcounts"` for other methods.
`useReducedDim`	character. A string specifying which reducedDim to use for DE analysis. Usually a pathway analysis result matrix. Set `useAssay` to `NULL` when using. Default `NULL`.
`index1`	Any type of indices that can subset a SingleCellExperiment inherited object by cells. Specifies which cells are of interests. Default `NULL`.

`index2`	Any type of indices that can subset a SingleCellExperiment inherited object by cells. specifies the control group against those specified by `index1`. If `NULL` when using index specification, `index1` cells will be compared with all other cells. Default `NULL`.
`class`	A vector/factor with `ncol(inSCE)` elements, or a character scalar that specifies a column name of `colData(inSCE)`. Default `NULL`.
`classGroup1`	a vector specifying which "levels" given in `class` are of interests. Default `NULL`.
`classGroup2`	a vector specifying which "levels" given in `class` is the control group against those specified by `classGroup1`. If `NULL` when using annotation specification, `classGroup1` cells will be compared with all other cells.
`analysisName`	A character scalar naming the DEG analysis. Required
`groupName1`	A character scalar naming the group of interests. Required.
`groupName2`	A character scalar naming the control group. Required.
`covariates`	A character vector of additional covariates to use when building the model. All covariates must exist in `names(colData(inSCE))`. Default `NULL`.
`fullReduced`	Logical, DESeq2 only argument. Whether to apply LRT (Likelihood ratio test) with a 'full' model. Default `TRUE`.
`onlyPos`	Whether to only output DEG with positive log2_FC value. Default `FALSE`.
`log2fcThreshold`	Only out put DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC greater than this value. Default `NULL`.
`fdrThreshold`	Only out put DEGs with FDR value less than this value. Default `NULL`.
`minGroup1MeanExp`	Only out put DEGs with mean expression in group1 greater then this value. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2MeanExp`	Only out put DEGs with mean expression in group2 less then this value. Default `NULL`.
`minGroup1ExprPerc`	Only out put DEGs expressed in greater then this fraction of cells in group1. Default `NULL`.
`maxGroup2ExprPerc`	Only out put DEGs expressed in less then this fraction of cells in group2. Default `NULL`.
`overwrite`	A logical scalar. Whether to overwrite result if exists. Default `FALSE`.
`check_sanity`	Logical, MAST only argument. Whether to perform MAST's sanity check to see if the counts are logged. Default `TRUE`.

Details

SCTK provides Limma, MAST, DESeq2, ANOVA and Wilcoxon test for differential expression analysis, where DESeq2 expects non-negtive integer assay input while others expect logcounts.

Condition specification allows two methods: 1. Index level selection. Arguments `index1` and `index2` will be used. 2. Annotation level selection. Arguments `class`, `classGroup1` and `classGroup2` will be used.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `metadata(inSCE)$diffExp` updated with the results: a list named by `analysisName`, with `$groupNames` containing the naming of the two conditions, `$useAssay` and `$useReducedDim` storing the matrix name that was used for calculation, `$select` storing the cell selection indices (logical) for each condition, `$result` storing a `data.frame` of the DEGs summary, and `$method` storing the character method name used.

See Also

See `plotDEGHeatmap`, `plotDEGRegression`, `plotDEGViolin` and `plotDEGVolcano` for visualization method after running DE analysis.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDEAnalysis(method = "Limma", inSCE = sce, groupName1 = "group1",
 groupName2 = "group2", index1 = seq(20), index2 = seq(21,40),
 analysisName = "Limma")
```

---

runDecontX *Detecting contamination with DecontX.*

Description

A wrapper function for decontX. Identify potential contamination from experimental factors such as ambient RNA.

Usage

```
runDecontX(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  background = NULL,
  bgAssayName = NULL,
  bgBatch = NULL,
  z = NULL,
  maxIter = 500,
  delta = c(10, 10),
  estimateDelta = TRUE,
  convergence = 0.001,
  iterLogLik = 10,
  varGenes = 5000,
  dbscanEps = 1,
  seed = 12345,
  logfile = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	A single character specifying a name that can be found in `colData(inSCE)` to directly use the cell annotation; or a character vector with as many elements as cells to indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Default NULL. decontX will be run on cells from each sample separately.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use. Default 'counts'.
`background`	A SingleCellExperiment with the matrix located in the assay slot under `bgAssayName`. It should have the same structure as inSCE except it contains the matrix of empty droplets instead of cells. When supplied, empirical distribution of transcripts from these empty droplets will be used as the contamination distribution. Default NULL.
`bgAssayName`	Character. Name of the assay to use if background is a SingleCellExperiment. If NULL, the function will use the same value as `useAssay`. Default is NULL.
`bgBatch`	Batch labels for `background`. If `background` is a SingleCellExperiment object, this can be a single character specifying a name that can be found in `colData(background)` to directly use the barcode annotation; or a numeric / character vector that has as many elements as barcodes to indicate which sample each barcode belongs to. Its unique values should be the same as those in `sample`, such that each batch of cells have their corresponding batch of empty droplets as background, pointed by this parameter. Default to NULL.
`z`	Numeric or character vector. Cell cluster labels. If NULL, PCA will be used to reduce the dimensionality of the dataset initially, 'umap' from the 'uwot' package will be used to further reduce the dataset to 2 dimenions and the 'dbscan' function from the 'dbscan' package will be used to identify clusters of broad cell types. Default NULL.
`maxIter`	Integer. Maximum iterations of the EM algorithm. Default 500.
`delta`	Numeric Vector of length 2. Concentration parameters for the Dirichlet prior for the contamination in each cell. The first element is the prior for the native counts while the second element is the prior for the contamination counts. These essentially act as pseudocounts for the native and contamination in each cell. If `estimateDelta = TRUE`, this is only used to produce a random sample of proportions for an initial value of contamination in each cell. Then `fit_dirichlet` is used to update `delta` in each iteration. If `estimateDelta = FALSE`, then `delta` is fixed with these values for the entire inference procedure. Fixing `delta` and setting a high number in the second element will force `decontX` to be more aggressive and estimate higher levels of contamination at the expense of potentially removing native expression. Default `c(10, 10)`.
`estimateDelta`	Boolean. Whether to update `delta` at each iteration.

`convergence`	Numeric. The EM algorithm will be stopped if the maximum difference in the contamination estimates between the previous and current iterations is less than this. Default 0.001.
`iterLogLik`	Integer. Calculate log likelihood every `iterLogLik` iteration. Default 10.
`varGenes`	Integer. The number of variable genes to use in dimensionality reduction before clustering. Variability is calcualted using `modelGeneVar` function from the 'scran' package. Used only when z is not provided. Default 5000.
`dbscanEps`	Numeric. The clustering resolution parameter used in 'dbscan' to estimate broad cell clusters. Used only when z is not provided. Default 1.
`seed`	Integer. Passed to with_seed. For reproducibility, a default value of 12345 is used. If NULL, no calls to with_seed are made.
`logfile`	Character. Messages will be redirected to a file named 'logfile'. If NULL, messages will be printed to stdout. Default NULL.
`verbose`	Logical. Whether to print log messages. Default TRUE.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with 'decontX_Contamination' and 'decontX_Clusters' added to the colData slot. Additionally, the decontaminated counts will be added as an assay called 'decontXCounts'.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runDecontX(sce[,sample(ncol(sce),20)])
```

`runDimReduce` *Generic Wrapper function for running dimensionality reduction*

Description

Generic Wrapper function for running dimensionality reduction

Usage

```
runDimReduce(
  inSCE,
  method = c("scaterPCA", "seuratPCA", "seuratICA", "rTSNE", "seuratTSNE",
    "scaterUMAP", "seuratUMAP"),
  useAssay = NULL,
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  useAltExp = NULL,
  reducedDimName,
  nComponents = 20,
  seed = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
method	One from "scaterPCA", "seuratPCA", "seuratICA", "rTSNE", "seuratTSNE", "scaterUMAP" and "seuratUMAP".
useAssay	Assay to use for computation. If useAltExp is specified, useAssay has to exist in assays(altExp(inSCE, useAltExp)). Default "counts".
useReducedDim	The low dimension representation to use for embedding computation. Default NULL.
useAltExp	The subset to use for computation, usually for the selected variable features. Default NULL.
reducedDimName	The name of the result matrix. Required.
nComponents	Specify the number of dimensions to compute with the selected method in case of PCA/ICA and the number of components to use in the case of TSNE/UMAP methods.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility of results. Default NULL will use global seed in use by the R environment.
...	The other arguments for running a specific algorithm. Please refer to the one you use.

Details

Wrapper function to run one of the available dimensionality reduction algorithms integrated within SCTK from scaterPCA, runSeuratPCA, runSeuratICA, getTSNE, runSeuratTSNE, getUMAP and runSeuratUMAP. Users can use an assay by specifying useAssay, use the assay in an altExp by specifying both useAltExp and useAssay, or use a low-dimensionality representation by specifying useReducedDim.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with reducedDim updated with the result.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runNormalization(sce, useAssay = "counts",
                        outAssayName = "logcounts_scaled",
                        normalizationMethod = "logNormCounts",
                        scale = TRUE)
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts_scaled",
                    reducedDimName = "PCA")
```

runDoubletFinder *Generates a doublet score for each cell via doubletFinder*

Description

Uses doubletFinder to determine cells within the dataset suspected to be doublets.

Usage

```
runDoubletFinder(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  sample = NULL,
  seed = 12345,
  seuratNfeatures = 2000,
  seuratPcs = seq(15),
  seuratRes = 1.5,
  formationRate = 0.075,
  nCores = NULL,
  verbose = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object. Must contain a counts matrix
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. Default "counts".
`sample`	Numeric vector. Each cell will be assigned a sample number.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
`seuratNfeatures`	Integer. Number of highly variable genes to use. Default 2000.
`seuratPcs`	Numeric vector. The PCs used in seurat function to determine number of clusters. Default 1:15.
`seuratRes`	Numeric vector. The resolution parameter used in seurat, which adjusts the number of clusters determined via the algorithm. Default 1.5.
`formationRate`	Doublet formation rate used within algorithm. Default 0.075.
`nCores`	Number of cores used for running the function.
`verbose`	Boolean. Wheter to print messages from Seurat and DoubletFinder. Default FALSE.

Value

SingleCellExperiment object containing the 'doublet_finder_doublet_score'.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runDoubletFinder(sce)
```

`runDropletQC` *Perform comprehensive droplet QC*

Description

A wrapper function to run several QC algorithms for determining empty droplets in single cell RNA-seq data

Usage

```
runDropletQC(
  inSCE,
  algorithms = c("QCMetrics", "emptyDrops", "barcodeRanks"),
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  paramsList = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object containing the full droplet count matrix
`algorithms`	Character vector. Specify which QC algorithms to run. Available options are "emptyDrops" and "barcodeRanks".
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Algorithms will be run on cells from each sample separately.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay contains the count matrix for droplets.
`paramsList`	A list containing parameters for QC functions. Default NULL.

Value

SingleCellExperiment object containing the outputs of the specified algorithms in the colData of `inSCE`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runDropletQC(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

runEmptyDrops *Identify empty droplets using emptyDrops.*

Description

Run emptyDrops on the count matrix in the provided SingleCellExperiment object. Distinguish between droplets containing cells and ambient RNA in a droplet-based single-cell RNA sequencing experiment.

Usage

```
runEmptyDrops(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  lower = 100,
  niters = 10000,
  testAmbient = FALSE,
  ignore = NULL,
  alpha = NULL,
  retain = NULL,
  barcodeArgs = list(),
  BPPARAM = BiocParallel::SerialParam()
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object. Must contain a raw counts matrix before empty droplets have been removed.
sample	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. emptyDrops will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default NULL.
useAssay	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.
lower	See emptyDrops for more information.
niters	See emptyDrops for more information.
testAmbient	See emptyDrops for more information.
ignore	See emptyDrops for more information.
alpha	See emptyDrops for more information.
retain	See emptyDrops for more information.
barcodeArgs	See emptyDrops for more information.
BPPARAM	See emptyDrops for more information.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with the emptyDrops output table appended to the colData slot. The columns include *emptyDrops_total*, *emptyDrops_logprob*, *emptyDrops_pvalue*, *emptyDrops_limited*, *emptyDrops_fdr*. Please refer to the documentation of emptyDrops for details.

Examples

```
# The following unfiltered PBMC_1k_v3 data were downloaded from
# https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/3.0.0
# /pbmc_1k_v3
# Only the top 10 cells with most counts and the last 10 cells with non-zero
# counts are included in this example.
# This example only serves as an proof of concept and a tutorial on how to
# run the function. The results should not be
# used for drawing scientific conclusions.
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- runEmptyDrops(inSCE = sce)
```

`runEnrichR` *Run EnrichR on SCE object*

Description

Run EnrichR on SCE object

Usage

```
runEnrichR(
  inSCE,
  features,
  analysisName,
  db = NULL,
  by = "rownames",
  featureName = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`features`	Character vector, selected genes for enrichment analysis.
`analysisName`	A string that identifies each specific analysis.
`db`	Character vector. Selected database name(s) from the enrichR database list. If `NULL` then EnrichR will be run on all the available databases on the enrichR database. See details. Default `NULL`
`by`	Character. From where should we find the `features`? `"rownames"` for from `rownames(inSCE)`, otherwise, from a column of feature metadata (`rowData(inSCE)[[by]]`). See details. Default `"rownames"`.

`featureName`	Character. Indicates the actual feature identifiers to be passed to EnrichR. Can be `"rownames"`, a column in feature metadata (`rowData(inSCE)[[featureName]]`), or a character vector with its length equals to `nrow(inSCE)`. See details. Default `"rownames"`.

Details

EnrichR works by querying the specified `features` to its online databases, thus it requires the Internet connection.

Available db options could be shown by running `enrichR::listEnrichrDbs()$libraryName`

This function checks for the existence of features in the SCE object. When `features` do not have a match in `rownames(inSCE)`, users may try to specify by to pass the check.

EnrichR expects gene symbols/names as the input (i.e. Ensembl ID might not work). When specified `features` are not qualified for this, users may try to specify `featureName` to change the identifier type to pass to EnrichR.

Value

Updates `inSCE` metadata with a data.frame of enrichment terms overlapping in the respective databases along with p-values, z-scores etc.

See Also

`getEnrichRResult`

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
if (Biobase::testBioCConnection()) {
  mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runEnrichR(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, features = "Cmtm5",
                                    db = "GO_Cellular_Component_2017",
                                    analysisName = "analysis1")
}
```

`runFastMNN` *Apply a fast version of the mutual nearest neighbors (MNN) batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

fastMNN is a variant of the classic MNN method, modified for speed and more robust performance. For introduction of MNN, see `runMNNCorrect`.

Usage

```
runFastMNN(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  reducedDimName = "fastMNN",
  batch = "batch",
  pcInput = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"logcounts"`. Alternatively, see `pcInput` parameter.
`reducedDimName`	A single character. The name for the corrected low-dimensional representation. Will be saved to `reducedDim(inSCE)`. Default `"fastMNN"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`pcInput`	A logical scalar. Whether to use a low-dimension matrix for batch effect correction. If `TRUE`, `useAssay` will be searched from `reducedDimNames(inSCE)`. Default `FALSE`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)` updated.

References

Lun ATL, et al., 2016

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sceCorr <- runFastMNN(sceBatches, useAssay = 'logcounts', pcInput = FALSE)
```

`runFeatureSelection` *Wrapper function to run all of the feature selection methods integrated within the singleCellTK package including three methods from Seurat (‘vst‘, ‘mean.var.plot‘ or ‘dispersion‘) and the Scran ‘modelGeneVar‘ method.*

Description

Wrapper function to run all of the feature selection methods integrated within the singleCellTK package including three methods from Seurat (‘vst‘, ‘mean.var.plot‘ or ‘dispersion‘) and the Scran ‘modelGeneVar‘ method.

Usage

```
runFeatureSelection(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  hvgMethod = c("vst", "mean.var.plot", "dispersion", "modelGeneVar")
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`useAssay`	Specify the name of the assay that should be used. A normalized assay is recommended for use with this function.
`hvgMethod`	Specify the method to use for variable gene selection. Options include `"vst"`, `"mean.var.plot"` or `"dispersion"` from Seurat and `"modelGeneVar"` from Scran.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object that contains the computed statistics in the `rowData` slot of the output object. This function does not return the names of the variable features but only computes the statistics that are stored in the `rowData` slot of the. To get the names of the variable features `getTopHVG` function should be used after computing these statistics.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runFeatureSelection(mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                           "logcounts",
                                           "modelGeneVar")
```

`runGSVA` *Run GSVA analysis on a SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Run GSVA analysis on a SingleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
runGSVA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  resultNamePrefix = NULL,
  geneSetCollectionName,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to use. The default is "logcounts"
`resultNamePrefix`	Character. Prefix to the name the GSVA results which will be stored in the reducedDim slot of `inSCE`. The names of the output matrix will be `resultNamePrefix_Scores`. If this parameter is set to `NULL`, then "GSVA_geneSetCollectionName_" will be used. Default `NULL`.
`geneSetCollectionName`	Character. The name of the gene set collection to use. parameter.
`...`	Parameters to pass to gsva()

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with pathway activity scores from GSVA stored in `reducedDim` as `GSVA_geneSetCollectionName_Scores`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
gs1 <- rownames(sce)[seq(10)]
gs2 <- rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)]
gs <- list("geneset1" = gs1, "geneset2" = gs2)

sce <- importGeneSetsFromList(inSCE = sce,geneSetList = gs,
                                          by = "rownames")
sce <- runGSVA(inSCE = sce, geneSetCollectionName = "GeneSetCollection", useAssay = "logcounts")
```

`runKMeans` *Get clustering with KMeans*

Description

Perform KMeans clustering on a `SingleCellExperiment` object, with `kmeans`.

Usage

```
runKMeans(
  inSCE,
  useReducedDim = "PCA",
  clusterName = "KMeans_cluster",
  nCenters,
  nIter = 10,
  nStart = 1,
  seed = 12345,
  algorithm = c("Hartigan-Wong", "Lloyd", "MacQueen")
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`useReducedDim`	A single `character`, specifying which low-dimension representation to perform the clustering algorithm on. Default `"PCA"`.
`clusterName`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the cluster label in `colData`. Default `"scranSNN_cluster"`.
`nCenters`	An `integer`, the number of centroids (clusters).
`nIter`	An `integer`, the maximum number of iterations allowed. Default `10`.
`nStart`	An `integer`, the number of random sets to choose. Default `1`.
`seed`	An `integer`. The seed for the random number generator. Default `12345`.
`algorithm`	A single `character`. Choose from `"Hartigan-Wong"`, `"Lloyd"`, `"MacQueen"`. May be abbreviated. Default `"Hartigan-Wong"`.

Value

The input `SingleCellExperiment` object with `factor` cluster labeling updated in `colData(inSCE)[[clusterName]]`.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runKMeans(mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                 useReducedDim = "PCA_logcounts",
                                 nCenters = 2)
```

runLimmaBC *Apply Limma's batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

Limma's batch effect removal function fits a linear model to the data, then removes the component due to the batch effects.

Usage

```
runLimmaBC(inSCE, useAssay = "logcounts", assayName = "LIMMA", batch = "batch")
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"logcounts"`.
`assayName`	A single characeter. The name for the corrected assay. Will be saved to `assay`. Default `"LIMMA"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `assay(inSCE, assayName)` updated.

References

Gordon K Smyth, et al., 2003

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sceCorr <- runLimmaBC(sceBatches)
```

`runMNNCorrect` *Apply the mutual nearest neighbors (MNN) batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

MNN is designed for batch correction of single-cell RNA-seq data where the batches are partially confounded with biological conditions of interest. It does so by identifying pairs of MNN in the high-dimensional log-expression space. For each MNN pair, a pairwise correction vector is computed by applying a Gaussian smoothing kernel with bandwidth ‘sigma‘.

Usage

```
runMNNCorrect(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  batch = "batch",
  assayName = "MNN",
  k = 20L,
  sigma = 0.1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"logcounts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`assayName`	A single characeter. The name for the corrected assay. Will be saved to `assay`. Default `"MNN"`.
`k`	An integer. Specifies the number of nearest neighbours to consider when defining MNN pairs. This should be interpreted as the minimum frequency of each cell type or state in each batch. Larger values will improve the precision of the correction by increasing the number of MNN pairs, at the cost of reducing accuracy by allowing MNN pairs to form between cells of different type. Default `20L`.
`sigma`	A Numeric scalar. Specifies how much information is shared between MNN pairs when computing the batch effect. Larger values will share more information, approaching a global correction for all cells in the same batch. Smaller values allow the correction to vary across cell types, which may be more accurate but comes at the cost of precision. Default `0.1`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `assay(inSCE, assayName)` updated.

References

Lun ATL, et al., 2016 & 2018

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sceCorr <- runMNNCorrect(sceBatches)
```

`runNormalization` *Wrapper function to run any of the integrated normalization/transformation methods in the singleCellTK. The available methods include 'LogNormalize', 'CLR', 'RC' and 'SCTransform' from Seurat, 'logNormCounts and 'CPM' from Scater. Additionally, users can 'scale' using Z.Score, 'transform' using log, log1p and sqrt, add 'pseudocounts' and trim the final matrices between a range of values.*

Description

Wrapper function to run any of the integrated normalization/transformation methods in the singleCellTK. The available methods include 'LogNormalize', 'CLR', 'RC' and 'SCTransform' from Seurat, 'logNormCounts and 'CPM' from Scater. Additionally, users can 'scale' using Z.Score, 'transform' using log, log1p and sqrt, add 'pseudocounts' and trim the final matrices between a range of values.

Usage

```
runNormalization(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  outAssayName = "customNormalizedAssay",
  normalizationMethod = NULL,
  scale = FALSE,
  seuratScaleFactor = 10000,
  transformation = NULL,
  pseudocountsBeforeNorm = NULL,
  pseudocountsBeforeTransform = NULL,
  trim = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`useAssay`	Specify the name of the assay that should be used.
`outAssayName`	Specify the name of the new output assay.
`normalizationMethod`	Specify a normalization method from ‘LogNormalize‘, ‘CLR‘, ‘RC‘ and ‘SCTransform‘ from Seurat or ‘logNormCounts‘ and ‘CPM‘ from scater packages. Default `NULL` is set which will not run any normalization method.
`scale`	Logical value indicating if the data should be scaled using Z.Score. Default `FALSE`.
`seuratScaleFactor`	Specify the ‘scaleFactor‘ argument if a Seurat normalization method is selected. Default is `10000`. This parameter will not be used if methods other than seurat are selected.
`transformation`	Specify the transformation options to run on the selected assay. Options include ‘log2‘ (base 2 log transformation), ‘log1p‘ (natural log + 1 transformation) and ‘sqrt‘ (square root). Default value is `NULL`, which will not run any transformation.
`pseudocountsBeforeNorm`	Specify a numeric pseudo value that should be added to the assay before normalization is performed. Default is `NULL`, which will not add any value.

`pseudocountsBeforeTransform`	Specify a numeric pseudo value that should be added to the assay before transformation is run. Default is `NULL`, which will not add any value.
`trim`	Specify a vector of two numeric values that should be used as the upper and lower trim values to trim the assay between these two values. For example, `c(10,-10)` will trim the values between 10 and -10. Default is `NULL`, which will not trim the data assay.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if progress messages should be displayed to the user. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Output SCE object with new normalized/transformed assay stored.

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
sce_chcl <- runNormalization(
 inSCE = sce_chcl,
 normalizationMethod = "LogNormalize",
 useAssay = "counts",
 outAssayName = "logcounts")
```

`runPerCellQC` *Wrapper for calculating QC metrics with scater.*

Description

A wrapper function for addPerCellQC. Calculate general quality control metrics for each cell in the count matrix.

Usage

```
runPerCellQC(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  collectionName = NULL,
  geneSetList = NULL,
  geneSetListLocation = "rownames",
  geneSetCollection = NULL,
  mitoRef = NULL,
  mitoIDType = NULL,
  mitoPrefix = NULL,
  mitoID = NULL,
  mitoGeneLocation = NULL,
  percent_top = c(50, 100, 200, 500),
  use_altexps = FALSE,
  flatten = TRUE,
  detectionLimit = 0,
  BPPARAM = BiocParallel::SerialParam()
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use. Default `"counts"`.
`collectionName`	Character. Name of a `GeneSetCollection` obtained by using one of the import-GeneSet* functions. Default `NULL`.
`geneSetList`	List of gene sets to be quantified. The genes in the assays will be matched to the genes in the list based on `geneSetListLocation`. Default `NULL`.
`geneSetListLocation`	Character or numeric vector. If set to 'rownames', then the genes in 'geneSetList' will be looked up in `rownames(inSCE)`. If another character is supplied, then genes will be looked up in the column names of `rowData(inSCE)`. A character vector with the same length as `geneSetList` can be supplied if the IDs for different gene sets are found in different places, including a mixture of 'rownames' and `rowData(inSCE)`. An integer or integer vector can be supplied to denote the column index in `rowData(inSCE)`. Default 'rownames'.
`geneSetCollection`	Class of `GeneSetCollection` from package `GSEAbase`. The location of the gene IDs in `inSCE` should be in the `description` slot of each gene set and should follow the same notation as `geneSetListLocation`. The function getGmt can be used to read in gene sets from a GMT file. If reading a GMT file, the second column for each gene set should be the description denoting the location of the gene IDs in `inSCE`. These gene sets will be included with those from `geneSetList` if both parameters are provided.
`mitoRef`	Character. The species used to extract mitochondrial genes ID from build-in mitochondrial geneset in SCTK. Available species options are "human" and "mouse". Default is `NULL`.
`mitoIDType`	Character. Types of mitochondrial gene id. Now it supports "symbol", "entrez", "ensembl" and "ensemblTranscriptID". It is used with `mitoRef` to extract mitochondrial genes from build-in mitochondrial geneset in SCTK. Default `NULL`.
`mitoPrefix`	Character. The prefix used to get mitochondrial gene from either rownames(inSCE) or columns of rowData(inSCE) specified by mitoGeneLocation. This parameter is usually used to extract mito genes from gene symbol. For example, mitoPrefix = "^MT-" can be used to detect mito gene symbols like "MT-ND4".
`mitoID`	Character. A vector of mitochondrial genes to be quantified.
`mitoGeneLocation`	Character. Describes the location within `inSCE` where the gene identifiers in the mitochondrial gene sets should be mapped. If set to `"rownames"` then the features will be searched for among `rownames(inSCE)`. This can also be set to one of the column names of `rowData(inSCE)` in which case the gene identifies will be mapped to that column in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. See featureIndex for more information. Default `NULL`.

`percent_top`	An integer vector. Each element is treated as a number of top genes to compute the percentage of library size occupied by the most highly expressed genes in each cell.
`use_altexps`	Logical scalar indicating whether QC statistics should be computed for alternative Experiments in x. If TRUE, statistics are computed for all alternative experiments. Alternatively, an integer or character vector specifying the alternative Experiments to use to compute QC statistics. Alternatively NULL, in which case alternative experiments are not used.
`flatten`	Logical scalar indicating whether the nested DataFrame-class in the output should be flattened.
`detectionLimit`	A numeric scalar specifying the lower detection limit for expression.
`BPPARAM`	A BiocParallelParam object specifying whether the QC calculations should be parallelized.

Details

This function allows multiple ways to import mitochondrial genes and quantify their expression.

- Using `mitoRef`, `mitoIDType` and `mitoGeneLocation` parameters will load the build-in mitochondrial geneset in SCTK package.
- Using `mitoPrefix` and `mitoGeneLocation` parameters will extract mitochondrial genes from either rownames(inSCE) or columns of rowData(inSCE) specified ny parameter `mitoGeneLocation`
- Using `mitoID` and `mitoGeneLocation` parameters will quantify the expression of mitochondrial genes stored in `mitoID`.

`mitoGeneLocation` is required if you use any methods mentioned above to quantify mitochondrial gene expression. Please make sure `mitoGeneLocation` is pointing to the location within inSCE object that stores the correct mitochondrial genes ID.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with cell QC metrics added to the colData slot. If `geneSetList` or `geneSetCollection` are provided, then the rownames for each gene set will be saved in `metadata(inSCE)$scater$addPerC`

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
mito.ix = grep("^MT-", rowData(sce)$feature_name)
geneSet <- list("Mito"=rownames(sce)[mito.ix])
sce <- runPerCellQC(sce, geneSetList = geneSet)
```

`runSCANORAMA`	*Apply the mutual nearest neighbors (MNN) batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

SCANORAMA is analogous to computer vision algorithms for panorama stitching that identify images with overlapping content and merge these into a larger panorama.

Usage

```
runSCANORAMA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  batch = "batch",
  SIGMA = 15,
  ALPHA = 0.1,
  KNN = 20L,
  assayName = "SCANORAMA"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Scanorama requires a transformed normalized expression assay. Default `"logcounts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`SIGMA`	A numeric scalar. Algorithmic parameter, correction smoothing parameter on Gaussian kernel. Default `15`.
`ALPHA`	A numeric scalar. Algorithmic parameter, alignment score minimum cutoff. Default `0.1`.
`KNN`	An integer. Algorithmic parameter, number of nearest neighbors to use for matching. Default `20L`.
`assayName`	A single characeter. The name for the corrected assay. Will be saved to `assay`. Default `"SCANORAMA"`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `assay(inSCE, assayName)` updated.

References

Brian Hie et al, 2019

Examples

```
## Not run:
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
sceBatches <- scaterlogNormCounts(sceBatches)
sceCorr <- runSCANORAMA(sceBatches, "ScaterLogNormCounts")

## End(Not run)
```

`runScDblFinder` *Detect doublet cells using scDblFinder.*

Description

A wrapper function for scDblFinder. Identify potential doublet cells based on simulations of putative doublet expression profiles. Generate a doublet score for each cell.

Usage

```
runScDblFinder(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  nNeighbors = 50,
  simDoublets = max(10000, ncol(inSCE)),
  seed = 12345,
  BPPARAM = BiocParallel::SerialParam()
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. scDblFinder will be run on cells from each sample separately.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use.
`nNeighbors`	Number of nearest neighbors used to calculate density for doublet detection. Default 50.
`simDoublets`	Number of simulated doublets created for doublet detection. Default 10000.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.
`BPPARAM`	A `BiocParallelParam` object specifying whether the neighbour searches should be parallelized.

Details

This function is a wrapper function for scDblFinder. `runScDblFinder` runs scDblFinder for each `sample` within `inSCE` iteratively. The resulting doublet scores for all cells will be appended to the colData of `inSCE`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with the scDblFinder QC outputs added to the colData slot.

References

Lun ATL (2018). Detecting doublet cells with scran. `https://ltla.github.io/SingleCellThoughts/software/doublet_detection/bycell.html`

See Also

scDblFinder

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runScDblFinder(sce)
```

`runSCMerge` *Apply scMerge batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

The scMerge method leverages factor analysis, stably expressed genes (SEGs) and (pseudo-) replicates to remove unwanted variations and merge multiple scRNA-Seq data.

Usage

```
runSCMerge(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  batch = "batch",
  assayName = "scMerge",
  seg = NULL,
  kmeansK = NULL,
  cellType = "cell_type",
  nCores = 1L
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Default `"logcounts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.

`assayName`	A single characeter. The name for the corrected assay. Will be saved to `assay`. Default `"scMerge"`.
`seg`	A vector of gene names or indices that specifies SEG (Stably Expressed Genes) set as negative control. Pre-defined dataset with human and mouse SEG lists is available to user by running `data('SEG')`. Default `NULL`, and this value will be auto-detected by default with `scSEGIndex`.
`kmeansK`	An integer vector. Indicating the kmeans' K-value for each batch (i.e. how many subclusters in each batch should exist), in order to construct pseudo-replicates. The length of codekmeansK needs to be the same as the number of batches. Default `NULL`, and this value will be auto-detected by default, depending on `cellType`.
`cellType`	A single character. A string indicating a field in `colData(inSCE)` that defines different cell types. Default `'cell_type'`.
`nCores`	An integer. The number of cores of processors to allocate for the task. Default `1L`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `assay(inSCE, assayName)` updated.

References

Hoa, et al., 2020

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
## Not run:
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
sceCorr <- runSCMerge(sceBatches)

## End(Not run)
```

`runScranSNN` *Get clustering with SNN graph*

Description

Perform SNN graph clustering on a `SingleCellExperiment` object, with graph construction by `buildSNNGraph` and graph clustering by "igraph" package.

Usage

```
runScranSNN(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = NULL,
  useReducedDim = NULL,
  useAltExp = NULL,
  altExpAssay = "counts",
  altExpRedDim = NULL,
  clusterName = "scranSNN_cluster",
  k = 10,
  nComp = 50,
  weightType = c("rank", "number", "jaccard"),
  algorithm = c("walktrap", "louvain", "infomap", "fastGreedy", "labelProp",
    "leadingEigen")
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`useAssay`	A single `character`, specifying which `assay` to perform the clustering algorithm on. Default `NULL`.
`useReducedDim`	A single `character`, specifying which low-dimension representation (`reducedDim`) to perform the clustering algorithm on. Default `NULL`.
`useAltExp`	A single `character`, specifying the assay which `altExp` to perform the clustering algorithm on. Default `NULL`.
`altExpAssay`	A single `character`, specifying which `assay` in the chosen `altExp` to work on. Only used when `useAltExp` is set. Default `"counts"`.
`altExpRedDim`	A single `character`, specifying which `reducedDim` within the `altExp` specified by `useAltExp` to use. Only used when `useAltExp` is set. Default `NULL`.
`clusterName`	A single `character`, specifying the name to store the cluster label in `colData`. Default `"scranSNN_cluster"`.
`k`	An `integer`, the number of nearest neighbors used to construct the graph. Smaller value indicates higher resolution and larger number of clusters. Default `10`.
`nComp`	An `integer`, the number of components to use when `useAssay` or `useAltExp` is specified. WON'T work with `useReducedDim`. Default `50`.
`weightType`	A single `character`, that specifies the edge weighing scheme when constructing the Shared Nearest-Neighbor (SNN) graph. Choose from `"rank"`, `"number"`, `"jaccard"`. Default `"rank"`.
`algorithm`	A single `character`, that specifies the community detection algorithm to work on the SNN graph. Choose from `"walktrap"`, `"louvain"`, `"infomap"`, `"fastGreedy"`, `"labelProp"`, `"leadingEigen"`. Default `"walktrap"`.

Value

The input `SingleCellExperiment` object with `factor` cluster labeling updated in `colData(inSCE)[[clusterName]]`.

References

Aaron Lun and et. al., 2016

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runScranSNN(mouseBrainSubsetSCE,
                                useReducedDim = "PCA_logcounts")
```

`runScrublet` *Find doublets using* `scrublet`.

Description

A wrapper function that calls `scrub_doublets` from python module `scrublet`. Simulates doublets from the observed data and uses a k-nearest-neighbor classifier to calculate a continuous `scrublet_score` (between 0 and 1) for each transcriptome. The score is automatically thresholded to generate `scrublet_call`, a boolean array that is `TRUE` for predicted doublets and `FALSE` otherwise.

Usage

```
runScrublet(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  simDoubletRatio = 2,
  nNeighbors = NULL,
  minDist = NULL,
  expectedDoubletRate = 0.1,
  stdevDoubletRate = 0.02,
  syntheticDoubletUmiSubsampling = 1,
  useApproxNeighbors = TRUE,
  distanceMetric = "euclidean",
  getDoubletNeighborParents = FALSE,
  minCounts = 3,
  minCells = 3L,
  minGeneVariabilityPctl = 85,
  logTransform = FALSE,
  meanCenter = TRUE,
  normalizeVariance = TRUE,
  nPrinComps = 30L,
  tsneAngle = NULL,
  tsnePerplexity = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE,
  seed = 12345
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object. Needs `counts` in assays slot.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to. Scrublet will be run on cells from each sample separately. If NULL, then all cells will be processed together. Default `NULL`.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use. Default 'counts'.
`simDoubletRatio`	Numeric. Number of doublets to simulate relative to the number of observed transcriptomes. Default 2.0.
`nNeighbors`	Integer. Number of neighbors used to construct the KNN graph of observed transcriptomes and simulated doublets. If `NULL`, this is set to `round(0.5 * sqrt(n_cells))`. Default `NULL`.
`minDist`	Float Determines how tightly UMAP packs points together. If `NULL`, this is set to 0.1. Default `NULL`.
`expectedDoubletRate`	The estimated doublet rate for the experiment. Default 0.1.
`stdevDoubletRate`	Uncertainty in the expected doublet rate. Default 0.02.
`syntheticDoubletUmiSubsampling`	Numeric. Rate for sampling UMIs when creating synthetic doublets. If 1.0, each doublet is created by simply adding the UMIs from two randomly sampled observed transcriptomes. For values less than 1, the UMI counts are added and then randomly sampled at the specified rate. Defuault: 1.0.
`useApproxNeighbors`	Boolean. Use approximate nearest neighbor method (annoy) for the KNN classifier. Default `TRUE`.
`distanceMetric`	Character. Distance metric used when finding nearest neighbors. For list of valid values, see the documentation for `annoy` (if `useApproxNeighbors` is `TRUE`) or `sklearn.neighbors.NearestNeighbors` (if `useApproxNeighbors` is `FALSE`). Default "euclidean".
`getDoubletNeighborParents`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, return the parent transcriptomes that generated the doublet neighbors of each observed transcriptome. This information can be used to infer the cell states that generated a given doublet state. Default `FALSE`.
`minCounts`	Numeric. Used for gene filtering prior to PCA. Genes expressed at fewer than `minCounts` in fewer than `minCells` (see below) are excluded. Default 3.
`minCells`	Integer. Used for gene filtering prior to PCA. Genes expressed at fewer than `minCounts` (see above) in fewer than `minCells` are excluded. Default 3.
`minGeneVariabilityPctl`	Numeric. Used for gene filtering prior to PCA. Keep the most highly variable genes (in the top minGeneVariabilityPctl percentile), as measured by the v-statistic (*Klein et al., Cell 2015*). Default 85.
`logTransform`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, log-transform the counts matrix (log10(1+TPM)). `sklearn.decomposition.Truncate` will be used for dimensionality reduction, unless `meanCenter` is `TRUE`. Default `FALSE`.

`meanCenter`	If `TRUE`, center the data such that each gene has a mean of 0. `sklearn.decomposition.PCA` will be used for dimensionality reduction. Default `TRUE`.
`normalizeVariance`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, normalize the data such that each gene has a variance of 1. `sklearn.decomposition.TruncatedSVD` will be used for dimensionality reduction, unless `meanCenter` is `TRUE`. Default `TRUE`.
`nPrinComps`	Integer. Number of principal components used to embed the transcriptomes prior to k-nearest-neighbor graph construction. Default 30.
`tsneAngle`	Float. Determines angular size of a distant node as measured from a point in the t-SNE plot. If default, it is set to 0.5 Default `NULL`.
`tsnePerplexity`	Integer. The number of nearest neighbors that is used in other manifold learning algorithms. If default, it is set to 30. Default `NULL`.
`verbose`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, print progress updates. Default `TRUE`.
`seed`	Seed for the random number generator. Default 12345.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with `scrub_doublets` output appended to the colData slot. The columns include *scrublet_score* and *scrublet_call*.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- runScrublet(sce)

## End(Not run)
```

`runSeuratFindClusters` *runSeuratFindClusters Computes the clusters from the input sce object and stores them back in sce object*

Description

runSeuratFindClusters Computes the clusters from the input sce object and stores them back in sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratFindClusters(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "seuratScaledData",
  useReduction = c("pca", "ica"),
  dims = 10,
  algorithm = c("louvain", "multilevel", "SLM"),
  groupSingletons = TRUE,
  resolution = 0.8,
  externalReduction = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object from which clusters should be computed and stored in
`useAssay`	Assay containing scaled counts to use for clustering.
`useReduction`	Reduction method to use for computing clusters. One of "pca" or "ica". Default `"pca"`.
`dims`	numeric value of how many components to use for computing clusters. Default `10`.
`algorithm`	selected algorithm to compute clusters. One of "louvain", "multilevel", or "SLM". Use `louvain` for "original Louvain algorithm" and `multilevel` for "Louvain algorithm with multilevel refinement". Default `louvain`.
`groupSingletons`	boolean if singletons should be grouped together or not. Default `TRUE`.
`resolution`	Set the resolution parameter to find larger (value above 1) or smaller (value below 1) number of communities. Default `0.8`.
`externalReduction`	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default `NULL`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Updated sce object which now contains the computed clusters

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindClusters(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

runSeuratFindHVG *runSeuratFindHVG Find highly variable genes and store in the input sce object*

Description

runSeuratFindHVG Find highly variable genes and store in the input sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratFindHVG(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  hvgMethod = "vst",
  hvgNumber = 2000,
  altExp = FALSE,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object to compute highly variable genes from and to store back to it
`useAssay`	Specify the name of the assay to use for computation of variable genes. It is recommended to use a raw counts assay with the ‘vst‘ method and normalized assay with all other methods. Default is `"counts"`.
`hvgMethod`	selected method to use for computation of highly variable genes. One of 'vst', 'dispersion', or 'mean.var.plot'. Default method is ‘vst‘ which uses the raw counts. All other methods use normalized counts.
`hvgNumber`	numeric value of how many genes to select as highly variable. Default `2000`
`altExp`	Logical value indicating if the input object is an altExperiment. Default `FALSE`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Updated `SingleCellExperiment` object with highly variable genes computation stored

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

runSeuratFindMarkers *runSeuratFindMarkers*

Description

runSeuratFindMarkers

Usage

```
runSeuratFindMarkers(
  inSCE,
  cells1 = NULL,
  cells2 = NULL,
  group1 = NULL,
  group2 = NULL,
  allGroup = NULL,
  conserved = FALSE,
  test = "wilcox",
  onlyPos = FALSE,
  minPCT = 0.1,
  threshUse = 0.25,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`cells1`	A `list` of sample names included in group1.
`cells2`	A `list` of sample names included in group2.
`group1`	Name of group1.
`group2`	Name of group2.
`allGroup`	Name of all groups.
`conserved`	Logical value indicating if markers conserved between two groups should be identified. Default is `FALSE`.
`test`	Test to use for DE. Default `"wilcox"`.
`onlyPos`	Logical value indicating if only positive markers should be returned.
`minPCT`	Numeric value indicating the minimum fraction of min.pct cells in which genes are detected. Default is `0.1`.
`threshUse`	Numeric value indicating the logFC threshold value on which on average, at least X-fold difference (log-scale) between the two groups of cells exists. Default is `0.25`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object that contains marker genes populated in a data.frame stored inside metadata slot.

`runSeuratHeatmap` *runSeuratHeatmap Computes the heatmap plot object from the pca slot in the input sce object*

Description

runSeuratHeatmap Computes the heatmap plot object from the pca slot in the input sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratHeatmap(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  useReduction = c("pca", "ica"),
  dims = NULL,
  nfeatures = 30,
  cells = NULL,
  ncol = NULL,
  balanced = TRUE,
  fast = TRUE,
  combine = TRUE,
  raster = TRUE,
  externalReduction = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object from which to compute heatmap (pca should be computed)
`useAssay`	Assay containing scaled counts to use in heatmap.
`useReduction`	Reduction method to use for computing clusters. One of "pca" or "ica". Default `"pca"`.
`dims`	Number of components to generate heatmap plot objects. If `NULL`, a heatmap will be generated for all components. Default `NULL`.
`nfeatures`	Number of features to include in the heatmap. Default `30`.
`cells`	Numeric value indicating the number of top cells to plot. Default is `NULL` which indicates all cells.
`ncol`	Numeric value indicating the number of columns to use for plot. Default is `NULL` which will automatically compute accordingly.
`balanced`	Plot equal number of genes with positive and negative scores. Default is `TRUE`.
`fast`	See DimHeatmap for more information. Default `TRUE`.

combine	See DimHeatmap for more information. Default TRUE.
raster	See DimHeatmap for more information. Default TRUE.
externalReduction	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default NULL.

Value

plot object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
heatmap <- runSeuratHeatmap(sce, useAssay = "counts")
plotSeuratHeatmap(heatmap)

## End(Not run)
```

---

runSeuratICA *runSeuratICA Computes ICA on the input sce object and stores the calculated independent components within the sce object*

Description

runSeuratICA Computes ICA on the input sce object and stores the calculated independent components within the sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratICA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  reducedDimName = "seuratICA",
  features = NULL,
  nics = 20,
  seed = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object on which to compute ICA
`useAssay`	Assay containing scaled counts to use in ICA.
`reducedDimName`	Name of new reducedDims object containing Seurat ICA Default `seuratICA`.
`features`	Specify the feature names or rownames which should be used for computation of ICA. Default is `NULL` which will use the previously stored variable features.
`nics`	Number of independent components to compute. Default `20`.
`seed`	Random seed for reproducibility of results. Default `NULL` will use global seed in use by the R environment.

Value

Updated `SingleCellExperiment` object which now contains the computed independent components

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratICA(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

`runSeuratIntegration` *runSeuratIntegration A wrapper function to Seurat Batch-Correction/Integration workflow.*

Description

runSeuratIntegration A wrapper function to Seurat Batch-Correction/Integration workflow.

Usage

```
runSeuratIntegration(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  batch,
  newAssayName = "SeuratIntegratedAssay",
  kAnchor,
  kFilter,
  kWeight,
  ndims = 10
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input `SingleCellExperiment` object that contains the assay to batch-correct.
`useAssay`	Assay to batch-correct.
`batch`	Batch variable from `colData` slot of `SingleCellExperiment` object.
`newAssayName`	Assay name for the batch-corrected output assay.
`kAnchor`	Number of neighbours to use for finding the anchors in the FindIntegrationAnchors function.
`kFilter`	Number of neighbours to use for filtering the anchors in the FindIntegrationAnchors function.
`kWeight`	Number of neighbours to use when weigthing the anchors in the IntegrateData function.
`ndims`	Number of dimensions to use. Default `10`.

Value

A `SingleCellExperiment` object that contains the batch-corrected assay inside the `altExp` slot of the object

---

`runSeuratJackStraw` *runSeuratJackStraw Compute jackstraw plot and store the computations in the input sce object*

Description

runSeuratJackStraw Compute jackstraw plot and store the computations in the input sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratJackStraw(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  dims = NULL,
  numReplicate = 100,
  propFreq = 0.025,
  externalReduction = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object on which to compute and store jackstraw plot
`useAssay`	Assay containing scaled counts to use in JackStraw calculation.
`dims`	Number of components to test in Jackstraw. If `NULL`, then all components are used. Default `NULL`.

numReplicate	Numeric value indicating the number of replicate samplings to perform. Default value is 100.
propFreq	Numeric value indicating the proportion of data to randomly permute for each replicate. Default value is 0.025.
externalReduction	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default NULL.

Value

Updated `SingleCellExperiment` object with jackstraw computations stored in it

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratJackStraw(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

runSeuratNormalizeData

runSeuratNormalizeData Wrapper for NormalizeData() function from seurat library Normalizes the sce object according to the input parameters

Description

runSeuratNormalizeData Wrapper for NormalizeData() function from seurat library Normalizes the sce object according to the input parameters

Usage

```
runSeuratNormalizeData(
  inSCE,
  useAssay,
  normAssayName = "seuratNormData",
  normalizationMethod = "LogNormalize",
  scaleFactor = 10000,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object to normalize
`useAssay`	Assay containing raw counts to use for normalization.
`normAssayName`	Name of new assay containing normalized data. Default `seuratNormData`.
`normalizationMethod`	selected normalization method. Default `"LogNormalize"`.
`scaleFactor`	numeric value that represents the scaling factor. Default `10000`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Normalized `SingleCellExperiment` object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

---

runSeuratPCA — *runSeuratPCA Computes PCA on the input sce object and stores the calculated principal components within the sce object*

Description

runSeuratPCA Computes PCA on the input sce object and stores the calculated principal components within the sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratPCA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "seuratScaledData",
  reducedDimName = "seuratPCA",
  nPCs = 20,
  features = NULL,
  seed = NULL,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	(sce) object on which to compute PCA
useAssay	Assay containing scaled counts to use in PCA.
reducedDimName	Name of new reducedDims object containing Seurat PCA. Default `seuratPCA`.
nPCs	numeric value of how many components to compute. Default `20`.
features	Specify the feature names or rownames which should be used for computation of PCA. Default is `NULL` which will use the previously stored variable features.
seed	Random seed for reproducibility of results. Default `NULL` will use global seed in use by the R environment.
verbose	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Updated `SingleCellExperiment` object which now contains the computed principal components

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

runSeuratScaleData *runSeuratScaleData Scales the input sce object according to the input parameters*

Description

runSeuratScaleData Scales the input sce object according to the input parameters

Usage

```
runSeuratScaleData(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "seuratNormData",
  scaledAssayName = "seuratScaledData",
  model = "linear",
  scale = TRUE,
  center = TRUE,
  scaleMax = 10,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object to scale
`useAssay`	Assay containing normalized counts to scale.
`scaledAssayName`	Name of new assay containing scaled data. Default `seuratScaledData`.
`model`	selected model to use for scaling data. Default `"linear"`.
`scale`	boolean if data should be scaled or not. Default `TRUE`.
`center`	boolean if data should be centered or not. Default `TRUE`
`scaleMax`	maximum numeric value to return for scaled data. Default `10`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Scaled `SingleCellExperiment` object

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")

## End(Not run)
```

`runSeuratSCTransform` *runSeuratSCTransform Runs the SCTransform function to transform/normalize the input data*

Description

runSeuratSCTransform Runs the SCTransform function to transform/normalize the input data

Usage

```
runSeuratSCTransform(
  inSCE,
  normAssayName = "SCTCounts",
  useAssay = "counts",
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object
`normAssayName`	Name for the output data assay. Default `"SCTCounts"`.
`useAssay`	Name for the input data assay. Default `"counts"`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Updated SingleCellExperiment object containing the transformed data

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE", package = "singleCellTK")
mouseBrainSubsetSCE <- runSeuratSCTransform(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)
```

`runSeuratTSNE` *runSeuratTSNE Computes tSNE from the given sce object and stores the tSNE computations back into the sce object*

Description

runSeuratTSNE Computes tSNE from the given sce object and stores the tSNE computations back into the sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratTSNE(
  inSCE,
  useReduction = c("pca", "ica"),
  reducedDimName = "seuratTSNE",
  dims = 10,
  perplexity = 30,
  externalReduction = NULL,
  seed = 1
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object on which to compute the tSNE
`useReduction`	selected reduction algorithm to use for computing tSNE. One of "pca" or "ica". Default `"pca"`.
`reducedDimName`	Name of new reducedDims object containing Seurat tSNE Default `seuratTSNE`.
`dims`	Number of reduction components to use for tSNE computation. Default `10`.

`perplexity`	Adjust the perplexity tuneable parameter for the underlying tSNE call. Default `30`.
`externalReduction`	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default `NULL`.
`seed`	Random seed for reproducibility of results. Default `1`.

Value

Updated sce object with tSNE computations stored

`runSeuratUMAP` *runSeuratUMAP Computes UMAP from the given sce object and stores the UMAP computations back into the sce object*

Description

runSeuratUMAP Computes UMAP from the given sce object and stores the UMAP computations back into the sce object

Usage

```
runSeuratUMAP(
  inSCE,
  useReduction = c("pca", "ica"),
  reducedDimName = "seuratUMAP",
  dims = 10,
  minDist = 0.3,
  nNeighbors = 30L,
  spread = 1,
  externalReduction = NULL,
  seed = 42,
  verbose = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	(sce) object on which to compute the UMAP
`useReduction`	Reduction to use for computing UMAP. One of "pca" or "ica". Default is `"pca"`.
`reducedDimName`	Name of new reducedDims object containing Seurat UMAP Default `seuratUMAP`.
`dims`	Numerical value of how many reduction components to use for UMAP computation. Default `10`.
`minDist`	Sets the `"min.dist"` parameter to the underlying UMAP call. See RunUMAP for more information. Default `0.3`.
`nNeighbors`	Sets the `"n.neighbors"` parameter to the underlying UMAP call. See RunUMAP for more information. Default `30L`.

`spread`	Sets the `"spread"` parameter to the underlying UMAP call. See RunUMAP for more information. Default `1`.
`externalReduction`	Pass DimReduc object if PCA/ICA computed through other libraries. Default `NULL`.
`seed`	Random seed for reproducibility of results. Default `42`.
`verbose`	Logical value indicating if informative messages should be displayed. Default is `TRUE`.

Value

Updated sce object with UMAP computations stored

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
## Not run:
sce <- runSeuratNormalizeData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindHVG(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratScaleData(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratPCA(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratFindClusters(sce, useAssay = "counts")
sce <- runSeuratUMAP(sce, useReduction = "pca")

## End(Not run)
```

runSingleR *Label cell types with SingleR*

Description

SingleR works with a reference dataset where the cell type labeling is given. Given a reference dataset of samples (single-cell or bulk) with known labels, it assigns those labels to new cells from a test dataset based on similarities in their expression profiles.

Usage

```
runSingleR(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useSCERef = NULL,
  labelColName = NULL,
  useBltinRef = c("hpca", "bpe", "mp", "dice", "immgen", "mouse", "zeisel"),
  level = c("main", "fine", "ont"),
  featureType = c("symbol", "ensembl"),
  labelByCluster = NULL
)
```

Arguments

inSCE	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
useAssay	character. A string specifying which assay to use for expression profile identification. Required.
useSCERef	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. An optional customized reference dataset. Default NULL.
labelColName	A single character. A string specifying the column in colData(useSCERef) that stores the cell type labeling. Default NULL.
useBltinRef	A single character. A string that specifies a reference provided by SingleR. Choose from "hpca", "bpe", "mp", "dice", "immgen","mouse", "zeisel". See detail. Default "hpca".
level	A string for cell type labeling level. Used only when using some of the SingleR built-in references. Choose from "main", "fine","ont". Default "main".
featureType	A string for whether to use gene symbols or Ensembl IDs when using a SingleR built-in reference. Should be set based on the type of rownames of inSCE. Choose from "symbol", "ensembl". Default "symbol".
labelByCluster	A single character. A string specifying the column name in colData(inSCE) that stores clustering labels. Use this when users want to only label cells on cluster level, instead of performing calculation on each cell. Default NULL.

Value

Input SCE object with cell type labeling updated in colData(inSCE), together with scoring metrics.

Examples

```
data("sceBatches")
logcounts(sceBatches) <- log(counts(sceBatches) + 1)
#sceBatches <- runSingleR(sceBatches, useBltinRef = "mp")
```

---

runSoupX   *Detecting and correct contamination with SoupX*

Description

A wrapper function for autoEstCont and adjustCounts. Identify potential contamination from experimental factors such as ambient RNA. Visit their vignette for better understanding.

Usage

```
runSoupX(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  background = NULL,
  bgAssayName = NULL,
  bgBatch = NULL,
  assayName = ifelse(is.null(background), "SoupX", "SoupX_bg"),
  cluster = NULL,
  reducedDimName = ifelse(is.null(background), "SoupX_UMAP_", "SoupX_bg_UMAP_"),
  tfidfMin = 1,
  soupQuantile = 0.9,
  maxMarkers = 100,
  contaminationRange = c(0.01, 0.8),
  rhoMaxFDR = 0.2,
  priorRho = 0.05,
  priorRhoStdDev = 0.1,
  forceAccept = FALSE,
  adjustMethod = c("subtraction", "soupOnly", "multinomial"),
  roundToInt = FALSE,
  tol = 0.001,
  pCut = 0.01
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.
`sample`	A single character specifying a name that can be found in `colData(inSCE)` to directly use the cell annotation; or a character vector with as many elements as cells to indicates which sample each cell belongs to. SoupX will be run on cells from each sample separately. Default `NULL`.
`useAssay`	A single character string specifying which assay in `inSCE` to use. Default `'counts'`.
`background`	A numeric matrix of counts or a SingleCellExperiment object with the matrix in `assay` slot. It should have the same structure as `inSCE` except it contains the matrix including empty droplets. Default `NULL`.
`bgAssayName`	A single character string specifying which assay in `background` to use when `background` is a SingleCellExperiment object. If `NULL`, the function will use the same value as `useAssay`. Default `NULL`.
`bgBatch`	The same thing as `sample` but for `background`. Can be a single character only when `background` is a SingleCellExperiment object. Default `NULL`.
`assayName`	A single character string of the output corrected matrix. Default `"SoupX"` when not using a background, otherwise, `"SoupX_bg"`.
`cluster`	Prior knowledge of clustering labels on cells. A single character string for specifying clustering label stored in `colData(inSCE)`, or a character vector with as many elements as cells. When not supplied, `quickCluster` method will be applied.
`reducedDimName`	A single character string of the prefix of output corrected embedding matrix for each sample. Default `"SoupX_UMAP_"` when not using a background, otherwise, `"SoupX_bg_UMAP_"`.
`tfidfMin`	Numeric. Minimum value of tfidf to accept for a marker gene. Default `1`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.

`soupQuantile`	Numeric. Only use genes that are at or above this expression quantile in the soup. This prevents inaccurate estimates due to using genes with poorly constrained contribution to the background. Default `0.9`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`maxMarkers`	Integer. If we have heaps of good markers, keep only the best maxMarkers of them. Default `100`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`contaminationRange`	Numeric vector of two elements. This constrains the contamination fraction to lie within this range. Must be between 0 and 1. The high end of this range is passed to `estimateNonExpressingCells` as `maximumContamination`. Default `c(0.01, 0.8)`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`rhoMaxFDR`	Numeric. False discovery rate passed to `estimateNonExpressingCells`, to test if rho is less than `maximumContamination`. Default `0.2`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`priorRho`	Numeric. Mode of gamma distribution prior on contamination fraction. Default `0.05`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`priorRhoStdDev`	Numeric. Standard deviation of gamma distribution prior on contamination fraction. Default `0.1`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`forceAccept`	Logical. Should we allow very high contamination fractions to be used. Passed to `setContaminationFraction`. Default `FALSE`. See `?SoupX::autoEstCont`.
`adjustMethod`	Character. Method to use for correction. One of `'subtraction'`, `'soupOnly'`, or `'multinomial'`. Default `'subtraction'`. See `?SoupX::adjustCounts`.
`roundToInt`	Logical. Should the resulting matrix be rounded to integers? Default `FALSE`. See `?SoupX::adjustCounts`.
`tol`	Numeric. Allowed deviation from expected number of soup counts. Don't change this. Default `0.001`. See `?SoupX::adjustCounts`.
`pCut`	Numeric. The p-value cut-off used when `method = 'soupOnly'`. Default `0.01`. See `?SoupX::adjustCounts`.

Value

The input `inSCE` object with `soupX_nUMIs`, `soupX_clustrers`, `soupX_contamination` appended to `colData` slot; `soupX_{sample}_est` and `soupX_{sample}_counts` for each sample appended to `rowData` slot; and other computational metrics at `getSoupX(inSCE)`. Replace "soupX" to "soupX_bg" when background is used.

Author(s)

Yichen Wang

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
## Not run:
# SoupX does not work for toy example,
# can be tested with `sce <- importExampleData("pbmc3k")`
sce <- runSoupX(sce, sample = "sample")

## End(Not run)
```

`runTSCAN` *Run runTSCAN function to obtain pseudotime values for cells*

Description

Wrapper for obtaining a pseudotime ordering of the cells by projecting them onto the MST

Usage

```
runTSCAN(inSCE, useReducedDim, cluster = NULL, seed = 12345)
```

Arguments

inSCE	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
useReducedDim	Character. Saved dimension reduction name in `inSCE` object. Required. Used for specifying which low-dimension representation to perform the clustering algorithm and building nearest neighbor graph on. Default `"PCA"`
cluster	Grouping for each cell in `inSCE`. A user may input a vector equal length to the number of the samples in `inSCE`, or can be retrieved from the `colData` slot. Default `NULL`.
seed	An integer. Set the seed for random process that happens only in "random" generation. Default `12345`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with pseudotime ordering of the cells along the paths

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
```

runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis

Run runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis function to observe changes between paths and to obtain DE genes

Description

Wrapper for looking for differences in expression between paths of a branched trajectory. The differential expression analysis may highlight genes which are responsible for the branching event

Usage

```
runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis(
  inSCE,
  useClusters,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  fdrThreshold = 0.05
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useClusters`	Choose the cluster containing the branch point in the data in order to recompute the pseudotimes so that the root lies at the cluster center, allowing us to detect genes that are associated with the divergence of the branches.
`useAssay`	Character. The name of the assay to use. This assay should contain log normalized counts.
`fdrThreshold`	Only out put DEGs with FDR value smaller than this value. Default `0.05`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with DE genes that are significant in our path of interest and are not significant and/or changing in the opposite direction in the other paths.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
```

```
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
sce <- runTSCANClusterDEAnalysis(inSCE = sce, useClusters = 5)
```

runTSCANDEG *Run runTSCANDEG function to obtain changes along a trajectory*

Description

Wrapper for identifying genes with significant changes with respect to one of the TSCAN pseudotimes

Usage

```
runTSCANDEG(
  inSCE,
  pathIndex,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  discardCluster = NULL,
  log2fcThreshold = 0
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`pathIndex`	Path number for which the pseudotime values should be used. `PathIndex` corresponds to one path from the root node to one of the terminal nodes.
`useAssay`	Character. The name of the assay to use. This assay should contain log normalized counts.
`discardCluster`	Optional. Clusters which are not of use or masks other interesting effects can be discarded.
`log2fcThreshold`	Only output DEGs with the absolute values of log2FC larger than this value. Default `0`

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with genes that decrease and increase in expression with increasing pseudotime along the path in the MST.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
rowData(sce)$Symbol <- rowData(sce)$feature_name
rownames(sce) <- rowData(sce)$Symbol
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "scaterPCA",
                    useAssay = "logcounts", reducedDimName = "PCA")
sce <- runDimReduce(inSCE = sce, method = "rTSNE", useReducedDim = "PCA",
                    reducedDimName = "TSNE")
sce <- runTSCAN (inSCE = sce, useReducedDim = "PCA", seed = NULL)
sce <- runTSCANDEG(inSCE = sce, pathIndex = 4)
```

`runVAM` *Run VAM to score gene sets in single cell data*

Description

Wrapper for the Variance-adjusted Mahalanobis (VAM), which is a fast and accurate method for cell-specific gene set scoring of single cell data. This algorithm computes distance statistics and one-sided p-values for all cells in the specified single cell gene expression matrix. Gene sets should already be imported and stored in the meta data using functions such as importGeneSetsFromList or importGeneSetsFromMSigDB

Usage

```
runVAM(
  inSCE,
  geneSetCollectionName,
  useAssay,
  resultNamePrefix = NULL,
  center = TRUE,
  gamma = FALSE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`geneSetCollectionName`	Character. The name of the gene set collection to use.
`useAssay`	Character. The name of the assay to use. This assay should contain log normalized counts.
`resultNamePrefix`	Character. Prefix to the name the VAM results which will be stored in the reducedDim slot of `inSCE`. The names of the output matrices will be `resultNamePrefix_Distance` and `resultNamePrefix_CDF`. If this parameter is set to `NULL`, then `"VAM_geneSetCollectionName_"` will be used. Default `NULL`.

`center`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, values will be mean centered when computing the Mahalanobis statistic. Default `TRUE`.
`gamma`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, a gamma distribution will be fit to the non-zero squared Mahalanobis distances computed from a row-permuted version of the gene expression matrix. The estimated gamma distribution will be used to compute a one-sided p-value for each cell. If `FALSE`, the p-value will be computed using the standard chi-square approximation for the squared Mahalanobis distance (or non-central if `center = FALSE`). Default `FALSE`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with VAM metrics stored in `reducedDim` as `VAM_NameOfTheGeneset_Distance` and `VAM_NameOfTheGeneset_CDF`.

Author(s)

Nida Pervaiz

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList, importGeneSetsFromMSigDB, importGeneSetsFromGMT, importGeneSetsFromCollection for importing gene sets. sctkListGeneSetCollections, getPathwayResultNames and getGenesetNamesFromCollection for available related information in `inSCE`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, assayName = "logcounts")
gs1 <- rownames(sce)[seq(10)]
gs2 <- rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)]
gs <- list("geneset1" = gs1, "geneset2" = gs2)
sce <- importGeneSetsFromList(inSCE = sce,geneSetList = gs,
                              by = "rownames")
sce <- runVAM(inSCE = sce,
              geneSetCollectionName = "GeneSetCollection",
              useAssay = "logcounts")
```

`runZINBWaVE` *Apply ZINBWaVE Batch effect correction method to SingleCellExperiment object*

Description

A general and flexible zero-inflated negative binomial model that can be used to provide a low-dimensional representations of scRNAseq data. The model accounts for zero inflation (dropouts), over-dispersion, and the count nature of the data. The model also accounts for the difference in library sizes and optionally for batch effects and/or other covariates.

Usage

```
runZINBWaVE(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "counts",
  batch = "batch",
  nHVG = 1000L,
  nComponents = 50L,
  epsilon = 1000,
  nIter = 10L,
  reducedDimName = "zinbwave"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	SingleCellExperiment inherited object. Required.
`useAssay`	A single character indicating the name of the assay requiring batch correction. Note that ZINBWaVE works for counts (integer) input rather than logcounts that other methods prefer. Default `"counts"`.
`batch`	A single character indicating a field in `colData` that annotates the batches. Default `"batch"`.
`nHVG`	An integer. Number of highly variable genes to use when fitting the model. Default `1000L`.
`nComponents`	An integer. The number of principle components or dimensionality to generate in the resulting matrix. Default `50L`.
`epsilon`	An integer. Algorithmic parameter. Empirically, a high epsilon is often required to obtained a good low-level representation. Default `1000L`.
`nIter`	An integer, The max number of iterations to perform. Default `10L`.
`reducedDimName`	A single character. The name for the corrected low-dimensional representation. Will be saved to `reducedDim(inSCE)`. Default `"zinbwave"`.

Value

The input SingleCellExperiment object with `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)` updated.

References

Pollen, Alex A et al., 2014

Examples

```
data('sceBatches', package = 'singleCellTK')
## Not run:
    sceCorr <- runZINBWaVE(sceBatches, nIter = 5)

## End(Not run)
```

`sampleSummaryStats` *Generate table of SCTK QC outputs.*

Description

Creates a table of QC metrics generated from QC algorithms, which is stored within the metadata slot of the input SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
sampleSummaryStats(
  inSCE,
  sample = NULL,
  useAssay = "counts",
  simple = TRUE,
  statsName = "qc_table"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved assay data and/or colData data. Required.
`sample`	Character vector. Indicates which sample each cell belongs to.
`useAssay`	A string specifying which assay in the SCE to use. Default 'counts'.
`simple`	Boolean. Indicates whether to generate a table of only basic QC stats (ex. library size), or to generate a summary table of all QC stats stored in the inSCE.
`statsName`	Character. The name of the slot that will store the QC stat table. Default "qc_table".

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with a summary table for QC statistics in the 'sample_summary' slot of metadata.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- sampleSummaryStats(sce, simple = TRUE)
getSampleSummaryStatsTable(sce, statsName = "qc_table")
```

scaterCPM — *scaterCPM Uses CPM from scater library to compute counts-per-million.*

Description

scaterCPM Uses CPM from scater library to compute counts-per-million.

Usage

```
scaterCPM(inSCE, assayName = "ScaterCPMCounts", useAssay = "counts")
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object
`assayName`	New assay name for cpm data.
`useAssay`	Input assay

Value

inSCE Updated SingleCellExperiment object

Author(s)

Irzam Sarfraz

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
sce_chcl <- scaterCPM(sce_chcl,"countsCPM", "counts")
```

scaterlogNormCounts — *scaterlogNormCounts Uses logNormCounts to log normalize input data*

Description

scaterlogNormCounts Uses logNormCounts to log normalize input data

Usage

```
scaterlogNormCounts(
  inSCE,
  assayName = "ScaterLogNormCounts",
  useAssay = "counts"
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object
`assayName`	New assay name for log normalized data
`useAssay`	Input assay

Value

inSCE Updated SingleCellExperiment object that contains the new log normalized data

Author(s)

Irzam Sarfraz

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
sce_chcl <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce_chcl,"logcounts", "counts")
```

`scaterPCA` *Perform PCA on a SingleCellExperiment Object A wrapper to runPCA function to compute principal component analysis (PCA) from a given SingleCellExperiment object.*

Description

Perform PCA on a SingleCellExperiment Object A wrapper to runPCA function to compute principal component analysis (PCA) from a given SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
scaterPCA(
  inSCE,
  useAssay = "logcounts",
  useAltExp = NULL,
  reducedDimName = "PCA",
  nComponents = 50,
  scale = FALSE,
  ntop = NULL,
  seed = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Assay to use for PCA computation. If `useAltExp` is specified, `useAssay` has to exist in `assays(altExp(inSCE, useAltExp))`. Default `"logcounts"`
`useAltExp`	The subset to use for PCA computation, usually for the selected.variable features. Default `NULL`.
`reducedDimName`	Name to use for the reduced output assay. Default `"PCA"`.
`nComponents`	Number of principal components to obtain from the PCA computation. Default `50`.
`scale`	Logical scalar, whether to standardize the expression values. Default `FALSE`.
`ntop`	Number of top features to use as a further variable feature selection. Default `NULL`.
`seed`	Random seed for reproducibility of PCA results.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with PCA computation updated in `reducedDim(inSCE, reducedDimName)`.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package = "singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- scaterlogNormCounts(sce, "logcounts")
sce <- scaterPCA(sce, "logcounts")
```

`sce` *Example Single Cell RNA-Seq data in SingleCellExperiment Object, subset of 10x public dataset https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/2.1.0/pbmc4k A subset of 390 barcodes and top 200 genes were included in this example. Within 390 barcodes, 195 barcodes are empty droplet, 150 barcodes are cell barcode and 45 barcodes are doublets predicted by scrublet and doubletFinder package. This example only serves as a proof of concept and a tutoriol on how to run the functions in this package. The results should not be used for drawing scientific conclusions.*

Description

Example Single Cell RNA-Seq data in SingleCellExperiment Object, subset of 10x public dataset https://support.10xgenomics.com/single-cell-gene-expression/datasets/2.1.0/pbmc4k A subset of 390 barcodes and top 200 genes were included in this example. Within 390 barcodes, 195 barcodes are empty droplet, 150 barcodes are cell barcode and 45 barcodes are doublets predicted by scrublet and doubletFinder package. This example only serves as a proof of concept and a tutoriol on how to run the functions in this package. The results should not be used for drawing scientific conclusions.

Usage

```
data("scExample")
```

Format

A SingleCellExperiment object.

Examples

```
data("scExample")
```

---

sceBatches *Example Single Cell RNA-Seq data in SingleCellExperiment object, with different batches annotated*

Description

Two batches of pancreas scRNAseq dataset are combined with their original counts. Cell types and batches are annotated in ‘colData(sceBatches)‘. Two batches came from Wang, et al., 2016, annotated as ‘’w’‘; and Xin, et al., 2016, annotated as ‘’x’‘. Two common cell types, ‘’alpha’‘ and ‘’beta’‘, that could be found in both original studies with relatively large population were kept for cleaner demonstration.

Usage

```
data('sceBatches')
```

Format

An object of class `SingleCellExperiment` with 100 rows and 250 columns.

---

scranModelGeneVar *scranModelGeneVar Generates and stores variability data from scran::modelGeneVar in the input singleCellExperiment object*

Description

scranModelGeneVar Generates and stores variability data from scran::modelGeneVar in the input singleCellExperiment object

Usage

```
scranModelGeneVar(inSCE, assayName)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	a singleCellExperiment object
`assayName`	selected assay to compute variable features from

Value

inSCE updated singleCellExperiment object that contains variable feature metrics in rowData

Author(s)

Irzam Sarfraz

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
sce_chcl <- scranModelGeneVar(sce_chcl, "counts")
```

`sctkListGeneSetCollections` *Lists imported GeneSetCollections*

Description

Returns a vector of GeneSetCollections that have been imported and stored in `metadata(inSCE)$sctk$genesets`.

Usage

```
sctkListGeneSetCollections(inSCE)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	A SingleCellExperiment object.

Value

Character vector.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

See Also

importGeneSetsFromList for importing from lists, importGeneSetsFromGMT for importing from GMT files, GeneSetCollection objects, and importGeneSetsFromMSigDB for importing MSigDB gene sets.

Examples

```
data(scExample)
library(GSEABase)
gs1 <- GeneSet(setName = "geneset1", geneIds = rownames(sce)[seq(10)])
gs2 <- GeneSet(setName = "geneset2", geneIds = rownames(sce)[seq(11,20)])
gsc1 <- GeneSetCollection(gs1)
gsc2 <- GeneSetCollection(gs2)
sce <- importGeneSetsFromCollection(inSCE = sce,
                                    geneSetCollection = gsc1,
                                    by = "rownames",
                                    collectionName = "Collection1")
sce <- importGeneSetsFromCollection(inSCE = sce,
                                    geneSetCollection = gsc2,
                                    by = "rownames",
                                    collectionName = "Collection2")
collections <- sctkListGeneSetCollections(sce)
```

---

sctkPythonInstallConda *Installs Python packages into a Conda environment*

Description

Install all Python packages used in the singleCellTK package using conda_install from package reticulate. This will create a new Conda environment with the name envname if not already present. Note that Anaconda or Miniconda already need to be installed on the local system.

Usage

```
sctkPythonInstallConda(
  envname = "sctk-reticulate",
  conda = "auto",
  packages = c("scipy", "numpy", "astroid", "six"),
  pipPackages = c("scrublet", "scanpy", "bbknn", "scanorama", "anndata"),
  selectConda = TRUE,
  forge = FALSE,
  pipIgnoreInstalled = TRUE,
  pythonVersion = NULL,
  ...
)
```

Arguments

envname	Character. Name of the conda environment to create.
conda	Character. Path to conda executable. Usue "auto" to find conda using the PATH and other conventional install locations. Default 'auto'.
packages	Character Vector. List of packages to install from Conda.

pipPackages	Character Vector. List of packages to install into the Conda environment using 'pip'.
selectConda	Boolean. Run selectSCTKConda after installing all packages to select the Conda environment. Default TRUE.
forge	Boolean. Include the Conda Forge repository.
pipIgnoreInstalled	Boolean. Ignore installed versions when using pip. This is TRUE by default so that specific package versions can be installed even if they are downgrades. The FALSE option is useful for situations where you don't want a pip install to attempt an overwrite of a conda binary package (e.g. SciPy on Windows which is very difficult to install via pip due to compilation requirements).
pythonVersion	Passed to python_version variable in conda_install. Default NULL.
...	Other parameters to pass to conda_install.

Value

None. Installation of Conda environment.

See Also

See conda_create for more information on creating a Conda environment. See conda_install for more description of the installation parameters. See https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/ for more information on package reticulate. See selectSCTKConda for reloading the Conda environment if R is restarted without going through the whole installation process again. See https://docs.conda.io/en/latest/ for more information on Conda environments.

Examples

```
## Not run:
sctkPythonInstallConda(envname = "sctk-reticulate")

## End(Not run)
```

sctkPythonInstallVirtualEnv

Installs Python packages into a virtual environment

Description

Install all Python packages used in the singleCellTK package using virtualenv_install from package reticulate. This will create a new virtual environment with the name envname if not already present.

Usage

```
sctkPythonInstallVirtualEnv(
  envname = "sctk-reticulate",
 packages = c("scipy", "numpy", "astroid", "six", "scrublet", "scanpy", "scanorama",
    "bbknn", "anndata"),
  selectEnvironment = TRUE,
  python = NULL
)
```

Arguments

`envname`	Character. Name of the virtual environment to create.
`packages`	Character Vector. List of packages to install.
`selectEnvironment`	Boolean. Run `selectSCTKVirtualEnvironment` after installing all packages to select the virtual environment. Default TRUE.
`python`	The path to a Python interpreter, to be used with the created virtual environment. When NULL, the Python interpreter associated with the current session will be used. Default NULL.

Value

None. Installation of virtual environment.

See Also

See `virtualenv_create` for more information on creating a Conda environment. See `virtualenv_install` for more description of the installation parameters. See `https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/` for more information on package `reticulate`. See `selectSCTKVirtualEnvironment` for reloading the virtual environment if R is restarted without going through the whole installation process again.

Examples

```
## Not run:
sctkPythonInstallVirtualEnv(envname = "sctk-reticulate")

## End(Not run)
```

SEG *Stably Expressed Gene (SEG) list obect, with SEG sets for human and mouse.*

Description

The two gene sets came from dataset called ‘segList‘ of package ‘scMerge‘.

Usage

```
data('SEG')
```

Format

list, with two entries "human" and "mouse", each is a charactor vector.

Source

```
data('segList', package='scMerge')
```

Examples

```
data('SEG')
humanSEG <- SEG$human
```

---

selectSCTKConda *Selects a Conda environment*

Description

Selects a Conda environment with Python packages used in singleCellTK.

Usage

```
selectSCTKConda(envname = "sctk-reticulate")
```

Arguments

envname	Character. Name of the conda environment to activate.

Value

None. Selects Conda environment.

See Also

conda-tools for more information on using Conda environments with package reticulate. See https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/ for more information on package reticulate.

See sctkPythonInstallConda for installation of Python modules into a Conda environment. Seeconda-tools for more information on using Conda environments with package reticulate. See https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/ for more information on package reticulate. See https://docs.conda.io/en/latest/ for more information on Conda environments.

Examples

```
## Not run:
sctkPythonInstallConda(envname = "sctk-reticulate", selectConda = FALSE)
selectSCTKConda(envname = "sctk-reticulate")

## End(Not run)
```

---

selectSCTKVirtualEnvironment
Selects a virtual environment

Description

Selects a virtual environment with Python packages used in `singleCellTK`

Usage

```
selectSCTKVirtualEnvironment(envname = "sctk-reticulate")
```

Arguments

`envname`	Character. Name of the virtual environment to activate.

Value

None. Selects virtual environment.

See Also

See `sctkPythonInstallVirtualEnv` for installation of Python modules into a virtual environment. See`virtualenv-tools` for more information on using virtual environments with package `reticulate`. See `https://rstudio.github.io/reticulate/` for more information on package `reticulate`.

Examples

```
## Not run:
sctkPythonInstallVirtualEnv(envname = "sctk-reticulate", selectEnvironment = FALSE)
selectSCTKVirtualEnvironment(envname = "sctk-reticulate")

## End(Not run)
```

setRowNames — *Set rownames of SCE with a character vector or a rowData column*

Description

Users can set rownames of an SCE object with either a character vector where the length equals to `nrow(x)`, or a single character specifying a column in `rowData(x)`. Also applicable to matrix like object where `rownames<-` method works, but only allows full size name vector. Users can set `dedup` = `TRUE` to remove duplicated entries in the specification, by adding `-1`, `-2`, `...`, `-i` suffix to the duplication of the same identifier.

Usage

```
setRowNames(x, rowNames, dedup = TRUE)
```

Arguments

`x`	Input object where the rownames will be modified.
`rowNames`	Character vector of the rownames. If `x` is an SingleCellExperiment object, a single character specifying a column in `rowData(x)`.
`dedup`	Logical. Whether to deduplicate the specified rowNames. Default `TRUE`

Value

The input SCE object with rownames updated.

Examples

```
data("scExample", package = "singleCellTK")
head(rownames(sce))
sce <- setRowNames(sce, "feature_name")
head(rownames(sce))
```

setSampleSummaryStatsTable<- — *Setter function which stores table of SCTK QC outputs to metadata.*

Description

Stores table of QC metrics generated from QC algorithms within the metadata slot of the SingleCellExperiment object.

Usage

```
setSampleSummaryStatsTable(inSCE, ...) <- value
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved assay data and/or colData data. Required.
`...`	Other arguments passed to the function.
`value`	The sample summary table of SCTK QC outputs

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object which contains a summary table for QC statistics generated from SingleCellTK.

`setSCTKDisplayRow` *Indicates which rowData to use for visualization*

Description

This function is to be used to specify which

Usage

```
setSCTKDisplayRow(inSCE, featureDisplayRow)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object with saved dimension reduction components or a variable with saved results. Required.
`featureDisplayRow`	Indicates which column name of rowData to be used for plots.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object with the specific column name of rowData to be used for plotting stored in metadata.

Examples

```
data(scExample, package="singleCellTK")
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
sce <- setSCTKDisplayRow(inSCE = sce, featureDisplayRow = "feature_name")
plotSCEViolinAssayData(inSCE = sce, feature = "ENSG00000019582")
```

simpleLog — *A decorator that prints the arguments to the decorated function*

Description

A decorator that prints the arguments to the decorated function

Usage

```
simpleLog(f)
```

Arguments

`f`	A function to decorate

Value

Prints message

singleCellTK — *Run the single cell analysis app*

Description

Use this function to run the single cell analysis app.

Usage

```
singleCellTK(inSCE = NULL, includeVersion = TRUE, theme = "yeti")
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`includeVersion`	Include the version number in the SCTK header. The default is TRUE.
`theme`	The bootswatch theme to use for the singleCellTK UI. The default is 'flatly'.

Value

The shiny app will open

Examples

```
## Not run:
#Upload data through the app
singleCellTK()

# Load the app with a SingleCellExperiment object
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
singleCellTK(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)

## End(Not run)
```

---

subDiffEx — *Passes the output of generateSimulatedData() to differential expression tests, picking either t-tests or ANOVA for data with only two conditions or multiple conditions, respectively.*

Description

Passes the output of generateSimulatedData() to differential expression tests, picking either t-tests or ANOVA for data with only two conditions or multiple conditions, respectively.

Usage

```
subDiffEx(tempData)

subDiffExttest(countMatrix, class.labels, test.type = "t.equalvar")

subDiffExANOVA(countMatrix, condition)
```

Arguments

`tempData`	Matrix. The output of generateSimulatedData(), where the first row contains condition labels.
`countMatrix`	Matrix. A simulated counts matrix, sans labels.
`class.labels`	Factor. The condition labels for the simulated cells. Will be coerced into 1's and 0's.
`test.type`	Type of test to perform. The default is t.equalvar.
`condition`	Factor. The condition labels for the simulated cells.

Value

subDiffEx(): A vector of fdr-adjusted p-values for all genes. Nonviable results (such as for genes with 0 counts in a simulated dataset) are coerced to 1.

subDiffExttest(): A vector of fdr-adjusted p-values for all genes. Nonviable results (such as for genes with 0 counts in a simulated dataset) are coerced to 1.

subDiffExANOVA(): A vector of fdr-adjusted p-values for all genes. Nonviable results (such as for genes with 0 counts in a simulated dataset) are coerced to 1.

Functions

- `subDiffEx`:
- `subDiffExttest`: Runs t-tests on all genes in a simulated dataset with 2 conditions, and adjusts for FDR.
- `subDiffExANOVA`: Runs ANOVA on all genes in a simulated dataset with more than 2 conditions, and adjusts for FDR.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
res <- generateSimulatedData(
         totalReads = 1000, cells=10,
         originalData = assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts"),
         realLabels = colData(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)[, "level1class"])
tempSigDiff <- subDiffEx(res)

data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
#sort first 100 expressed genes
ord <- rownames(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)[
  order(rowSums(assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts")),
        decreasing = TRUE)][seq(100)]
#subset to those first 100 genes
subset <- mouseBrainSubsetSCE[ord, ]
res <- generateSimulatedData(totalReads = 1000, cells=10,
                             originalData = assay(subset, "counts"),
                             realLabels = colData(subset)[, "level1class"])
realLabels <- res[1, ]
output <- res[-1, ]
fdr <- subDiffExttest(output, realLabels)

data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
#sort first 100 expressed genes
ord <- rownames(mouseBrainSubsetSCE)[
  order(rowSums(assay(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, "counts")),
        decreasing = TRUE)][seq(100)]
# subset to those first 100 genes
subset <- mouseBrainSubsetSCE[ord, ]
res <- generateSimulatedData(totalReads = 1000, cells=10,
                             originalData = assay(subset, "counts"),
                             realLabels = colData(subset)[, "level2class"])
realLabels <- res[1, ]
output <- res[-1, ]
fdr <- subDiffExANOVA(output, realLabels)
```

`subsetSCECols` *Subset a SingleCellExperiment object by columns*

Description

Used to peform subsetting of a SingleCellExperiment object using a variety of methods that indicate the correct columns to keep. The various methods, `index`, `bool`, and `colData`, can be used in conjunction with one another.

Usage

```
subsetSCECols(inSCE, index = NULL, bool = NULL, colData = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`index`	Integer vector. Vector of indicies indicating which columns to keep. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.
`bool`	Boolean vector. Vector of `TRUE` or `FALSE` indicating which columns should be kept. Needs to be the same length as the number of columns in `inSCE`. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.
`colData`	Character. An expression that will identify a subset of columns using variables found in the `colData` of `inSCE`. For example, if `x` is a numeric vector in `colData`, then `"x < 5"` will return all columns with x less than 5. Single quotes should be used for character strings. For example, `"y == 'yes'"` will return all columns where y is "yes". Multiple expressions can be evaluated by placing them in a vector. For example `c("x < 5", "y =='yes'")` will apply both operations for subsetting. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object that has been subsetted by colData.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

Examples

```
data(scExample)
sce <- subsetSCECols(sce, colData = "type != 'EmptyDroplet'")
```

`subsetSCERows` *Subset a SingleCellExperiment object by rows*

Description

Used to peform subsetting of a SingleCellExperiment object using a variety of methods that indicate the correct rows to keep. The various methods, `index`, `bool`, and `rowData`, can be used in conjunction with one another. If `returnAsAltExp` is set to `TRUE`, then the returned object will have the same number of rows as the input `inSCE` as the subsetted object will be stored in the `altExp` slot.

Usage

```
subsetSCERows(
  inSCE,
  index = NULL,
  bool = NULL,
  rowData = NULL,
  returnAsAltExp = TRUE,
  altExpName = "subset",
  prependAltExpName = TRUE
)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`index`	Integer vector. Vector of indicies indicating which rows to keep. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.
`bool`	Boolean vector. Vector of `TRUE` or `FALSE` indicating which rows should be kept. Needs to be the same length as the number of rows in `inSCE`. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.
`rowData`	Character. An expression that will identify a subset of rows using variables found in the `rowData` of `inSCE`. For example, if `x` is a numeric vector in `rowData`, then `"x < 5"` will return all rows with x less than 5. Single quotes should be used for character strings. For example, `"y == 'yes'"` will return all rows where y is "yes". Multiple expressions can be evaluated by placing them in a vector. For example `c("x < 5", "y =='yes'")` will apply both operations for subsetting. If `NULL`, this will not be used for subsetting. Default `NULL`.
`returnAsAltExp`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, the subsetted SingleCellExperiment object will be returned in the `altExp` slot of `inSCE`. If `FALSE`, the subsetted SingleCellExperiment object will be directly returned.
`altExpName`	Character. Name of the alternative experiment object to add if `returnAsAltExp = TRUE`. Default `subset`.
`prependAltExpName`	Boolean. If `TRUE`, `altExpName` will be added to the beginning of the assay names in the `altExp` object. This is only utilized if `returnAsAltExp = TRUE`. Default `TRUE`.

Value

A SingleCellExperiment object that has been subsetted by rowData.

Author(s)

Joshua D. Campbell

Examples

```
data(scExample)

# Set a variable up in the rowData indicating mitochondrial genes
rowData(sce)$isMito <- ifelse(grepl("^MT-", rowData(sce)$feature_name),
                              "yes", "no")
sce <- subsetSCERows(sce, rowData = "isMito == 'yes'")
```

---

summarizeSCE *Summarize an assay in a SingleCellExperiment*

Description

Creates a table of summary metrics from an input SingleCellExperiment

Usage

```
summarizeSCE(inSCE, useAssay = NULL, sampleVariableName = NULL)
```

Arguments

`inSCE`	Input SingleCellExperiment object.
`useAssay`	Indicate which assay to summarize. If `NULL`, then the first assay in `inSCE` will be used. Default `NULL`.
`sampleVariableName`	Variable name in `colData` denoting which sample each cell belongs to. If `NULL`, all cells will be assumed to come from the same sample. Default `"sample"`.

Value

A data.frame object of summary metrics.

Examples

```
data("mouseBrainSubsetSCE")
summarizeSCE(mouseBrainSubsetSCE, sample = NULL)
```

`trimCounts` *Trim Counts*

Description

Trims an input count matrix such that each value greater than a threshold value and each value less than a provided lower threshold value is trimmed to the lower treshold value.

Usage

```
trimCounts(counts, trimValue = c(10, -10))
```

Arguments

`counts`	matrix
`trimValue`	where trimValue[1] for upper threshold and trimValue[2] as lower threshold. Default is `c(10,-10)`

Value

trimmed counts matrix

Examples

```
data(sce_chcl, package = "scds")
assay(sce_chcl, "countsTrimmed") <- trimCounts(assay(sce_chcl, "counts"),
                                               c(10, -10))
```

Index